DATA STORAGE HIERARCHY SYSTEMS FOR

DATA BASE COMPUTERS

by

Chat-Yu Lam

B.Sc. Massachusetts Institute of Technology
(1974)

M.Sc. Northwestern University
(1976)

SUBMITTED IN PARTIAL FULFILLMENT
OF THE REQUIREMENTS FOR THE
DEGREE OF

DOCTOR OF PHILOSOPHY

at the

MASSACHUSETTS INSTITUTE OF TECHNOLOGY

(August, 1979)

ⓒ   Chat-Yu Lam   1979

Signature of Author ....
                    Sloan School of Management, August 1, 1979

Certified by ....
                                            Thesis Supervisor

Accepted by ....
                            Chairman, Department Committee

Report Documentation Page		Form Approved OMB No. 0704-0188
Report Documentation Page		*Form Approved* *OMB No. 0704-0188*

Public reporting burden for the collection of information is estimated to average 1 hour per response, including the time for reviewing instructions, searching existing data sources, gathering and maintaining the data needed, and completing and reviewing the collection of information. Send comments regarding this burden estimate or any other aspect of this collection of information, including suggestions for reducing this burden, to Washington Headquarters Services, Directorate for Information Operations and Reports, 1215 Jefferson Davis Highway, Suite 1204, Arlington VA 22202-4302. Respondents should be aware that notwithstanding any other provision of law, no person shall be subject to a penalty for failing to comply with a collection of information if it does not display a currently valid OMB control number.

1. REPORT DATE **AUG 1979**	2. REPORT TYPE	3. DATES COVERED **00-00-1979 to 00-00-1979**
4. TITLE AND SUBTITLE **Data Storage Hierarchy Systems for Data Base Computers**		5a. CONTRACT NUMBER
		5b. GRANT NUMBER
		5c. PROGRAM ELEMENT NUMBER
6. AUTHOR(S)		5d. PROJECT NUMBER
		5e. TASK NUMBER
		5f. WORK UNIT NUMBER
7. PERFORMING ORGANIZATION NAME(S) AND ADDRESS(ES) **Massachusetts Institute of Technology,77 Massachusetts Avenue,Cambridge,MA,02139**		8. PERFORMING ORGANIZATION REPORT NUMBER
9. SPONSORING/MONITORING AGENCY NAME(S) AND ADDRESS(ES)		10. SPONSOR/MONITOR'S ACRONYM(S)
		11. SPONSOR/MONITOR'S REPORT NUMBER(S)
12. DISTRIBUTION/AVAILABILITY STATEMENT **Approved for public release; distribution unlimited**		
13. SUPPLEMENTARY NOTES		

14. ABSTRACT

The need for efficient storage and processing of very large databases to support decision-making coupled with advances in computer hardware and software technology have made research and development of specialized architectures for database management a very attractive and important area. The INFOPLEX data base computer proposed by Madnick applies the theory of hierarchical decomposition to obtain a specialized architecture for database management with substantial improvements in performance and reliability over conventional architectures. The storage subsystem of INFOPLEX is realized using a data storage hierarchy. A data storage hierarchy is a storage subsystem designed specifically for managing the storage and retrieval of very large databases using storage devices with different cost/performance characteristics arranged in a hierarchy. It makes use of locality of data references to realize a low cost storage subsystem with very large capacity and small access time. As part of the INFOPLEX research effort, this thesis is focused on the study of high performance, highly reliable data storage hierarchy systems. Concepts of the INFOPLEX data base computer are refined and new concepts of data storage hierarchy systems are developed. A preliminary design of a general structure for the INFOPLEX data storage hierarchy system is proposed. Theories of data storage hierarchy systems are developed. Madnick's model of a generalized storage hierarchy is extended and formalized for data storage hierarchy systems. The Least Recently Used (LRU) algorithm is extended to incorporate the read-through strategy and page overflow strategies to obtain four classes of data movement algorithms. These algorithms are formally defined. Important performance and reliability properties of data storage hierarchy systems that make use of these algorithms are identified and analyzed in detail. It is proved in Theorems 1 and 2 that depending on the relative sizes of the storage levels and the algorithms used, it is not always possible to guarantee that the contents of a given storage level 'i' is a superset of the contents of its immediate higher storage level 'i-l', i.e., multi-level inclusion (MLI) does not hold. Necessary and sufficient conditions for MLI to hold are identified and proven in Theorems 3 and 4. A property related to MLI is the multi-level overflow inclusion (MLOI) property. MLOI holds if an overflow page from storage level 'i' is always found to already exist in storage level 'i+l'. A data storage hierarchy avoids cascaded references to lower storage levels if MLOI holds. Necessary and sufficient conditions for the MLOI to hold are identified and proven in Theorems 5 and 6. It is possible that increasing the sizes of intermediate storage levels may

15. SUBJECT TERMS

16. SECURITY CLASSIFICATION OF:			17. LIMITATION OF ABSTRACT	18. NUMBER OF PAGES	19a. NAME OF RESPONSIBLE PERSON
a. REPORT **unclassified**	b. ABSTRACT **unclassified**	c. THIS PAGE **unclassified**	**Same as Report (SAR)**	**320**	

Data Storage Hierarchy Systems for
Data Base Computers

by
Chat-Yu Lam

ABSTRACT

The need for efficient storage and processing of very
large databases to support decision-making coupled with
advances in computer hardware and software technology have
made research and development of specialized architectures
for database management a very attractive and important
area.

The INFOPLEX data base computer proposed by Madnick
applies the theory of <u>hierarchical</u> <u>decomposition</u> to obtain a
specialized architecture for database management with
substantial improvements in performance and reliability over
conventional architectures. The storage subsystem of
INFOPLEX is realized using a data storage hierarchy. A data
storage hierarchy is a storage subsystem designed
specifically for managing the storage and retrieval of very
large databases using storage devices with different
cost/performance characteristics arranged in a hierarchy.
It makes use of <u>locality</u> of data references to realize a low
cost storage subsystem with very large capacity and small
access time.

As part of the INFOPLEX research effort, this thesis is
focused on the study of high performance, highly reliable
data storage hierarchy systems. Concepts of the INFOPLEX
data base computer are refined and new concepts of data
storage hierarchy systems are developed. A preliminary
design of a general structure for the INFOPLEX data storage
hierarchy system is proposed.

Theories of data storage hierarchy systems are developed.
Madnick's model of a generalized storage hierarchy is
extended and formalized for data storage hierarchy systems.
The Least Recently Used (LRU) algorithm is extended to
incorporate the read-through strategy and page overflow
strategies to obtain four classes of data movement
algorithms. These algorithms are formally defined.
Important performance and reliability properties of data

storage hierarchy systems that make use of these algorithms are identified and analyzed in detail. It is proved in Theorems 1 and 2 that depending on the relative sizes of the storage levels and the algorithms used, it is not always possible to guarantee that the contents of a given storage level 'i' is a superset of the contents of its immediate higher storage level 'i-1', i.e., multi-level inclusion (MLI) does not hold. Necessary and sufficient conditions for MLI to hold are identified and proven in Theorems 3 and 4. A property related to MLI is the multi-level overflow inclusion (MLOI) property. MLOI holds if an overflow page from storage level 'i' is always found to already exist in storage level 'i+1'. A data storage hierarchy avoids cascaded references to lower storage levels if MLOI holds. Necessary and sufficient conditions for the MLOI to hold are identified and proven in Theorems 5 and 6. It is possible that increasing the sizes of intermediate storage levels may actually increase the number of references to lower storage levels, resulting in decreased performance. This is referred to as the multi-level paging anomaly (MLPA). Conditions necessary to avoid MLPA are identified and proven in Theorems 7 and 8.

A simplified structure of the INFOPLEX data storage hierarchy is derived from its general structure. Protocols for supporting the read-through and store-behind algorithms are specified. Two simulation models of this system are developed. The first model incorporates one functional processor and three storage levels. Results from this model provide significant insights to the design and its algorithms and reveals a potential deadlock in the buffer management schemes. The second model corrects this potential deadlock and also incroproates five functional processors and four storage levels. Results from this model show that the store-behind operation may be a significant system bottleneck because of the multi-level inclusion requirement of the data storage hierarchy. By using more parallelism in the lower storage levels and by using smaller block sizes it is possible to obtain a well-balanced system which is capable of supporting the storage references generated by the INFOPLEX functional hierarchy. The effects of using projected 1985 technology for the data storage hierarchy are also assessed.

Thesis Supervisor: Prof. Stuart E. Madnick
                   Associate Professor of Management Science
                   M.I.T. Sloan School of Management

-3-

ACKNOWLEDGMENT

-4-

TABLE OF CONTENTS

- 5 -

- 7 -

Chapter I

INTRODUCTION AND PLAN OF THESIS

1.1   INTRODUCTION

The effective and efficient storage and processing of
very large data bases to support better decision-making has
been a major concern of modern organizations. Though
advances in computer technology are impressive, the rate of
growth of information processing in organizations is
increasing even more rapidly. A key technological advance
in providing better information processing systems is the
development of Data Base Management Systems (DBMS's) (Mar-
tin, 1975). Most organizations today make use of some kind
of DBMS for handling their large databases. Efforts to
develop even more effective DBMS's remain very active and
important (Mohan, 1978).

Current DBMS's are capable of handling large databases on
the order of trillion bits of data (Simonson and Alsbrooks,
1975), and are capable of handling query rates of up to one
hundred queries per second (Abe, 1977). Due to the increas-
ing need for better information, and the declining costs of
processors and storage devices, it is expected that future

high performance DBMS's will be required to handle query rates and provide storage capacities several orders of magnitude higher than today's (Madnick, 1977). Furthermore, with such high query rates (generated by terminal users as well as directly from other computers), it is essential that a DBMS maintains non-stop operation (Computerworld, 1976). Thus, guaranteeing the reliability of the DBMS becomes very difficult.

Current improvements in processor and storage device technology alone do not seem to be able to meet these orders of magnitude improvements in performance and reliability. The nex section reviews several research efforts aimed at modifying the conventional computer architecture for better information handling. One such research effort is the INFO-PLEX Project (Lam and Madnick, 1979). The INFOPLEX approach to obtaining a high performance, highly reliable DBMS is to design a new computer specifically for data management. This thesis is a study of the storage subsystem of the INFO-PLEX data base computer. Research goals and specific accomplishments of this thesis will be described in a following section. The structure of this thesis is then described.

1.2 RELATED RESEARCH

In the past, computers were designed primarily for numerical computation. We now find that processing of large databases has become a major, if not dominant, component of computer usage. However, current computer structures still have the 'von Neumann' structure of twenty years ago. As Mueller (Mueller, 1976), President of System Development Corporation, noted: 'the computer industry has gone through three generations of development to perfect machines optimized for 10 percent of the workload'. It is not surprising then, that many organizations find their supercomputers running 'out of steam' as new applications with large databases are installed.

Figure 1.1 illustrates a simplified typical computer architecture. It consists of a processor directly accessing a main memory (with access time in the order of microseconds), an I/O processor that controls the movement of data between main memory and secondary storage devices, an I/O controller and its associated secondary storage devices (with access times in the order of milliseconds). Current DBMS's are software systems that reside in the main memory together with other software subsystems and application programs. To provide a high level view of data for application programs a DBMS has to manage all the data residing in sec-

Figure 1.1 A Typical Computer Architecture

ondary storage devices and coordinate all the data movement
and processing activities. Two potential deficiencies of
adapting the conventional computer architecture for data
base management become evident. First, the processor
becomes strained as new functions are added to the DBMS.
These new functions include high level language support,
better security and data integrity mechanisms, support of
multiple data models, ..., and so on. Second, due to the
large differential in access times of main memory and secon-
dary storage devices (referred to as the 'access gap'), the
speed of processing becomes limited by how fast 'useful data
can be brought into main memory from secondary storage dev-
ices. Thus, many organizations find the performance of
their data management system either limited by the available
processor cycles or limited by the speed of I/O operations,
depending on the DBMS used and the applications supported.

These problems have been recognized for some time. Cur-
rent advances in LSI technology make it feasible to consider
new software and hardware architectures to overcome the
above deficiencies. Several such approaches are discussed
below.

1.2.1 New Instructions Through Microprogramming

Conventional processor instructions are usually not well suited to the requirements of database management systems. Using firmware, it is possible to augment or enhance the instructions thus effectively increase the efficiency of the processor. This approach has been adopted in several systems. One of the earliest efforts occurred as part of the LISTAR information retrieval system developed at M.I.T.'s Lincoln Laboratory (Armenti et al., 1970), where several frequently used operations, such as a generalized List Search operation, were incorporated into the microcode of an IBM System/360 Model 67 computer. The Honeywell H60/64 uses special instructions to perform data format conversion and hashing corresponding to frequently used subroutines of Honeywell's IDS database system (Bachman, 1975). More recently the IBM System/38 (Soltis and Hoffman, 1979) was announced with microcode to perform much of the operating system and data management functions. The performance advantages of this approach are highly dependent upon the frequency of use of the new instructions and the extent to which they fit into the design of the overall database system software.

1.2.2 Storage Hierarchy Optimization

It is possible to close the 'access gap' between main memory and secondary storage devices by using a more continuous storage hierarchy, thus improving the performance of the storage subsystem.

Madnick (Madnick, 1973) proposed a model of a generalized storage hierarchy system and its data movement algorithms. This storage hierarchy makes use of multiple page sizes across the storage levels for high performance and maintains multiple data redundancy across the storage levels for high performance and high reliability. This type of storage hierarchy systems have great potentials as storage subsystems for high performance, highly reliable DBMS's. Unfortunately, the lack of better understanding of this type of storage hierarchy systems is a major obstacle in the development of practical storage subsystems in spite of the fact that a continuous spectrum of storage devices with different cost/performance characteristics will persist (Dennis et. al., 1978; Hoagland, 1979; Smith, 1978a).

There has been much work on studying storage hierarchy systems and their algorithms. We shall review these work in a later chapter. These studies usually do not consider the effects of multiple page sizes across different storage levels, nor the problems of providing multiple data redundancy

across the storage levels, as in the system proposed by
Madnick. Developing theories for generalized storage hier-
archy systems specifically for managing large database
remains a challenge.

1.2.3   Intelligent Controllers

Another approach to improving information processing
efficiency is to use intelligent controllers. The control-
ler provides an interface between the main memory and the
devices. Recently, more and more intelligence has been
introduced into these controllers. For example, many con-
trollers can perform the search key operation themselves
(Ahern et al., 1972; Lang et al., 1977). Since only
selected data items are brought to the main memory, the I/O
traffic is reduced and the efficiency of the storage subsys-
tem is increased.

Two major types of intelligent controllers have emerged.
The first type specializes in automating the data transfer
between the storage devices, i.e., the physical storage man-
agement functions. For example, IBM's 3850 Mass Storage
System (Johnson, 1975) uses an intelligent controller to
automatically transfer data between high-capacity, slow-
speed tape cartridges and medium-capacity, fast moving-head
disks. Thus, the processor is relieved of the burden to
manage these data movements.

The second type of intelligent controllers is designed to handle some of the logical storage management functions, such as searching for a specific data record based on a key. This latter type of device is sometimes referred to as a database computer, and is often used to perform associative or parallel searching (Langdon, 1978). Most parallel associative search strategies are based on a head-per-track storage device technology (for example, magnetic drums, LSI shift registers, and magnetic bubbles) and a multitude of comparators. As each data record rotates, either mechanically or electronically, past a read/write head, it is compared with a match record register, called the mask. Examples of this type of intelligent controllers include CASSM (Copeland et al., 1973; Healy et al., 1972; Su and Lipovski, 1975; Su, 1977; Su et. al., 1979), the Rotating Associative Relational Storage (RARES) design (Lin et al., 1976), and the Rotating Associative Processor (RAP) (Ozkarahan et al., 1975; Schuster et al., 1976; Ozkarahan et al., 1977; Schuster, 1978; Schuster, et. al., 1979).

Although the decline in the costs of comparator electronics, due to advances in LSI technology, makes parallel search strategies quite promising for the future, they are only well suited to storage technologies that lend themselves to low cost read/write mechanisms, and for optimal

performance and operation they tend to require a fairly simple and uniform database structure (e.g., relational flat files). To use these intelligent controllers in conjunction with other storage devices, such as mass storage, some "staging" mechanisms have to be used. Furthermore, these intelligent controllers only support part of the information management functions, much of the complex functions of language interpretation, support of multiple user interfaces, etc., of an information management system cannot easily be performed in these controllers.

1.2.4   Back-end Processors

The fourth approach is to shift the entire database management function from the main computer to a dedicated computer thus increasing the processor power available for performing the data management function. Such a computer is often called a back-end processor. The back-end processor is usually a minicomputer specifically programmed to perform all of the functions of the database management system.

Back-end processors have evolved rapidly in recent years. Some of the earliest experimental efforts include the loosely coupled DATACOMPUTER (Marill and Stern, 1975), developed by the Computer Corporation of America using the DECSystem-10 computer, and the tightly coupled XDMS (Canady

et al., 1974), developed by Bell Laboratories by modifying
the firmware of a Digital Scientific META-4 minicomputer.
More recent developments include the Cullinane Corporation's
IDMS on a PDP/11 compuater. Since the back-end processor is
still a conventional computer whose architecture has been
designed for computational purposes, not for information
management, its performance is still quite limited.

1.2.5   Data Base Computers

    The fifth approach to providing improved information pro-
cessing efficiency is the database computer. The difference
between this approach and the fourth approach (back-end pro-
cessor) is that the database computer has a system architec-
ture particularly suitable for database operations while a
back-end processor merely adapts a conventional computer to
database applications.

    There has been relatively little research on the develop-
ment of true database computers (as opposed to work on
intelligent controllers and/or dedicated back-end processors
-- which are sometimes referred to as database computers).
Current data base computer research efforts include the DBC
(Hsiao and Kannan, 1976; Banerjee, et. al., 1978; Banerjee,
et. al., 1979) at the Ohio State University, the GDS (Hako-
zaki et al., 1977) at the Nippon Electric Co., Japan, and

the INFOPLEX effort at M.I.T. (Madnick, 1975b; Lam and Mad-
nick, 1979; Madnick, 1979).

Data Base Computer seems to be a long term solution to
the DBMS requirements of future computer systems. The DBC
approach at Ohio State University makes use of specialized
functional processors for performing the data management
functions thus eliminating the processor bottleneck that
exists in current DBMS's. To improve the efficiency of the
storage subsystem, the DBC makes use of the idea of a parti-
tioned content addressable memory (PCAM). The entire
address space is divided into partitions, each of which is
content addressable. To realize content addressability cost
effectively, the DBC makes use of multiple intelligent con-
trollers at the secondary storage devices.

The INFOPLEX architecture also makes use of multiple
functional processors. However, to obtain a flexible, high
performance, and highly reliable storage subsystem, INFOPLEX
makes use of a storage hierarchy system based on the Madnick
proposal (Madnick, 1973). Conceptually, the INFOPLEX data-
base computer consists of a functional hierarchy and a phy-
sical (storage) hierarchy (See Figure 1.2). The INFOPLEX
functional hierarchy is a hierarchy of specialized micropro-
cessors. It implements all the information management func-
tions of a database manager, such as query language

request rource

FUNCTIONAL HIERARCHY

functional
processor

cluster

level i

interlevel request queue

level j

STORAGE HIERARCHY

storage interface

data
bus

level i

memory processor
cluster

device

level j

Figure 1.2   The INFOPLEX Structure

interpretation, security verification, and data path accessing, etc. The hierarchy of functional processors establishes a pipeline. Within each stage of the pipeline, multiple processors are used to realize parallel processing and provide multiple redundancy. The INFOPLEX storage hierarchy is designed specifically to support the data storage requirements of the functional hierarchy. To provide high performance and high reliability, it makes use of a highly parallel and reliable architecture, implements distributed control mechanisms, and maintains multiple data redundancy.

1.3 RESEARCH GOALS AND ACCOMPLISHMENTS

This thesis is a study of the INFOPLEX data storage hierarchy. We have studied data storage hierarchy systems from five different and related points of view: (1) development of concepts for INFOPLEX and data storage hierarchy systems, (2) architectural design of data storage hierarchy systems, (3) theoretic analysis of data storage hierarchy systems, (4) algorithm development for data storage hierarchy systems, and (5) performance evaluation of data storage hierarchy systems. Specific goals and accomplishments of this thesis are listed below.

1. Develop and extend concepts of data base computers and data storage hierarchy systems: Since Madnick's (Madnick,1975b) proposal to develop a high performance, highly reliable data base computer, called INFOPLEX, there has been many alternative approaches to develop special architectures for data base management. We have reviewed these proposals and categorized these efforts into: (1) new instructions through microprogramming, (2) storage hierarchy optimization, (3) intelligent controllers, (4) back-end processor, and (5) data base computers. Concepts of the INFOPLEX data base computer have been refined and leads to the development of the concept of a data storage hierarchy.

2. Architectural design of data storage hierarchy systems: Although storage hierarchy systems with two or three levels are very common in current computer systems, there is no known storage hierarchy with more than three storage levels that has been designed specifically for large databases. A preliminary design of the general structure of a data storage hierarchy with an arbitrary number of storage levels has been developed. This structure

is the basis for future designs of data storage hierarchy systems for the INFOPLEX data base computer.

3. Theoretic analysis of data storage hierarchy systems: Madnick (Madnick, 1973) proposed the model of a generalized storage hierarchy system that incorporates multiple page sizes and maintains multiple data redundancy for high performance and high reliability. This model is extended and formalized for data storage hierarchy systems. The Least Recently Used (LRU) algorithm is extended to incorporate the read-through strategy for managing the data movement in data storage hierarchy systems. Four classes of algorithms are obtained and formally defined. The multi-level inclusion (MLI), multi-level overflow inclusion (MLOI), and multi-level paging anomaly (MLPA) properties of data storage hierarchy systems using these algorithms are analyzed in detail and formally proved as eight theorems and nine lemmas.

4. Develop algorithms for data storage hierarchy systems: A simplified structure of the INFOPLEX data storage hierarchy is obtained from the general structure. Protocols to support the read-through

and the store-behind data movement algorithms are developed for this structure.

5. Performance evaluation of data storage hierarchy systems: Two GPSS/360 simulation models of the INFOPLEX data storage hierarchy are developed. Simulation results reveal several unexpected properties of the data storage hierarchy design and its algorithms. A well-balanced system is used to compare the performance differential of using technology in 1979 versus projected technology in 1985. These simulation results indicate that the current INFOPLEX data storage hierarchy design is capable of supporting the read and write traffic generated by the INFOPLEX functional hierarchy.

1.4 STRUCTURE OF THESIS

This thesis is an important step towards developing storage hierarchy systems specifically for data base computers. Existing models of storage hierarchy systems are extended to obtain a formal model of storage hierarchy system which incorporates multiple page sizes and maintains multiple data redundancy. Key properties of such systems are analyzed in detail. Architectures of storage hierarchy systems for INFOPLEX are developed and the performance of these designs

are evaluated. Details of this research are presented in
seven chapters. Chapter one is self-explainatory. The fol-
lowing outlines the contents of the other chapters.

1.4.1   Chapter 2 : The INFOPLEX Data Base Computer
                 Architecture

This chapter introduces the objectives and approaches of
the INFOPLEX data base computer. Concepts and research
approaches used in the INFOPLEX functional hierarchy and the
INFOPLEX data storage hierarchy are described. This chapter
provides the background and motivation for the research on
data storage hierarchy systems.

1.4.2   Chapter 3 : A General Structure of the INFOPLEX
                 Data Storage Hierarchy

A preliminary design of the INFOPLEX data storage hier-
archy, DSH-1, is proposed. The design objectives of DSH-1
are discussed. Then the structure of DSH-1 is introduced.
This design can be used to explore design issues associated
with the INFOPLEX data storage hierarchy. Key design issues
are identified.

1.4.3   Chapter 4 : Modelling and Analysis of Data
                 Storage Hierarchy Systems

Current research efforts in storage hierarchy systems are
briefly reviewed. A formal model of data storage hierarchy

systems incorporating multiple page sizes and maintain multiple data redundancy is developed. Extensions to the Least Recently Used (LRU) algorithm are developed to incorporate the read-through strategy. Important performance and reliability properties of these systems are formally proved. These results provide valuable insights to designing data storage hierarchy systems. The formalisms developed provide a solid basis for further theoretic analysis of data storage hierarchy systems.

1.4.4 Chapter 5 : Design of the DSH-11 Data Storage Hierarchy System

The general structure of the INFOPLEX data storage hierarchy is used to derive a simpler structure, DSH-11. This structure is used as a basis for developing protocols for supporting the read and write operations. Specifications for these protocols are presented.

1.4.5 Chapter 6 : Simulation Studies of the DSH-11 Data Storage Hierarchy System

A simulation model of DSH-11 with one processor and three storage levels is developed. Results from simulation studies using this model provide valuable insights to the DSH-11 design and its algorithms. This knowledge is incorporated into another simulation model of DSH-11 that consists of five processors and four storage levels. Simula-

tion studies from this model reveal further interesting

properties of the read-through and store-behind algorithms.

The simulation results also indicate that the current design

is capable of supporting the very high rate of storage

references generated by the INFOPLEX functional hierarchy.

1.4.6   <u>Chapter</u> <u>7</u> : <u>Discussions</u> <u>and</u> <u>Conclusions</u>

Chapter 7 summarizes this thesis and indicates fruitful

areas for further research.

Chapter II

THE INFOPLEX DATA BASE COMPUTER ARCHITECTURE

2.1   INTRODUCTION

This chapter discusses the INFOPLEX data base computer concepts and its approaches. Specific areas of contribution of this thesis to the development of the INFOPLEX data base computer are then listed.

The key concepts of the INFOPLEX architecture are hierarchical decomposition and distributed control. Techniques of hierarchical decomposition are applied to organize the information management functions to obtain a highly modular functional hierarchy. Each level of the functional hierarchy is implemented using multiple microprocessors. Techniques of hierarchical decomposition are also applied to organize the storage subsystem to obtain a modular storage hierarchy capable of supporting the storage requirements of the functional hierarchy. Microprocessors are used at each level of the hierarchy to implement the storage management algorithms so the hierarchy appears as a very large, highly reliable, high performance virtual storage space.

Due to the high modularity of these organizations, both the functional hierarchy and the storage hierarchy can take advantage of underlined distributed underlined control mechanisms. Each level in a hierarchy only communicates with its adjacent levels and each module within a level only communicates with its adjacent modules. Thus, no central control mechanism is necessary. Distributed control enhances reliability since there is no single component in the system whose failure renders the entire system inoperative. Distributed control also enhances performance since there is no system bottleneck as would exist in a centrally controlled system.

A functionally decomposed hierarchy, implemented using multiple microprocessors, can support pipeline processing naturally. That is, multiple requests for information can be at various stages of processing at different levels of the hierarchy simultaneously. Such an architecture also enhances reliability since errors can be isolated within a level in the hierarchy thus simplifying error detection and correction.

Parallel processing is made possible by the hierarchical decomposition and implementation using multiple microprocessors. For example, there may be several identical modules that implement the same function within a level. All these modules can be simultaneously operating on different

requests, at the same time, providing potential backup for one another.

Thus, the distributed control, pipeline and parallel processing capabilities of INFOPLEX provide very high reliability and high performance.

In addition to providing high performance and high reliability, a viable data base computer must be able to take advantage of new technological innovations. It must be able to easily upgrade to incorporate new algorithms, e.g., a new security checking technique, or new hardware innovations, e.g., a new storage device. Due to its modular structure, the INFOPLEX functional hierarchy can take advantage of new techniques and technologies as they are developed. The INFOPLEX storage hierarchy is specifically designed to be able to handle any type of storage devices. Thus rather than being specialized to a particular data structure, or type of storage device, INFOPLEX is designed to adapt to the changing application needs as well as to take advantage of new technological innovations.

2.2   THE INFOPLEX FUNCTIONAL HIERARCHY

An information management system performs a spectrum of very complex functions in response to user requests for information. These requests are often expressed using very

high level languages and often come from many different sources simultaneously. There are many ways that these complex functions can be implemented. The technique of <u>hierarchical functional decomposition</u> has been found to be very effective for advanced information systems (Donovan and Jacoby, 1975). Similar techniques have been used successfully in operating systems (Dijkstra, 1968; Madnick and Donovan, 1974), basic file systems (Madnick and Alsop, 1969; Madnick, 1970), and a wide range of complex systems (Pattee, 1973).

This is the approach used in INFOPLEX. The information management functions are systematically decomposed into a functional hierarchy, referred to as the INFOPLEX functional decomposition. The functional modules in the hierarchy are then implemented using multiple microprocessors.

2.2.1 Rationale for Functional Decomposition

The central idea underlying the hierarchical functional decomposition approach involves decomposing the system into a hierarchy consisting of a number of levels, such that each level interacts only with the levels below it in the hierarchy. Proper selection of the hierarchy allows design or operating problems that previously impacted the entire system, to be isolated to one or a few specific hierarchical levels, and thereby more easily handled (Parnas, 1976).

Isolating the information management functions into minimally interrelated modules facilitates the use of multiple identical modules for performing the same function, so that reliability and parallelism are enhanced. Furthermore, this approach provides great flexibility in the technologies used for implementating each type of functional module. For example, a particular data structure may be selected from a spectrum of indexing techniques for a given module without affecting the design of other types of modules.

2.2.2 Example of a Functional Decomposition

To illustrate the hierarchical functional decomposition concept, a specific example of a functional decomposition is discussed in this section. Figure 2.1 illustrates a plausible hierarchical functional decomposition. Each level of the functional hierarchy is described below.

2.2.2.1 Entities and Entity Sets

At the most fundamental level, a database system stores information about things, or entities. Also, it is usually the case that entities represented in a database fall naturally into logical groups, or "entity sets". The way in which a database system (a) represents and stores information about entities themselves, and (b) represents information about the logical grouping of entities into entity sets, forms the bedrock architecture of the system.

- 33 -

Figure 2.1 An Example Functional Hierarchy

There are many schemes available for logically and physically representing entities (i.e., coding, storing, and addressing entities) and various algorithms for structuring entity sets. The choice of implementation scheme at this level affects the performance of the entire system but does not affect how the functions of the other levels are implemented.

2.2.2.2 Binary Relations

All relationships among entities can be expressed in terms of binary relationships between pairs of entities. This functional level makes use of the entity level constructs to provide a collection of binary relations (relations between pairs of entity sets). An element of a binary relation can be viewed as a triad, consisting of a relation identifier plus two entities, each from one of the entity sets participating in the binary relation. Thus a binary relation can be viewed as a collection of triads with the same relation identifier.

Perhaps the simplest possible implementation of a set of binary relations would be as a sequential file of triads, for example,

        (HAS_SALARY_OF , SMITH , 1200)
        (HAS_SALARY_OF , JONES , 1500)

```
                ...
    (WORKS_IN_DEPT ,  SMITH ,   02)
    (WORKS_IN_DEPT ,  JONES ,   07)
                ...
```

The difficulties with this approach are manifest: there is
great data redundancy and thus waste of storage (the rela-
tion identifiers are stored in each triad); insertion of
additional triads would either have to be done out of order,
or else insertions and deletions would be extremely time-
consuming.

Triads could also be stored as linked lists. Alterna-
tively hashing algorithms could be employed to locate any
triad, given two of its three components. The use of linked
lists can improve access speed and reduce storage require-
ments. On the other hand, the use of hashing algorithms
would provide extremely rapid access, but would be poorer in
terms of storage space utilization.

Since a database may contain billions of triads, the log-
ical and physical structures of binary relations have seri-
ous performance implications. Many implementation schemes
for binary relations are possible. Although the choice of
these implementation schemes has various cost and perfor-
mance implications it does not affect how the functions of
the next level are implemented.

2.2.2.3   N-ary Relations

Conceptually, an n-ary relation may be thought of as a table of data, with rows of the table (usually called tuples) corresponding approximately to records in a traditional data file, and columns (or domains) corresponding to fields.   Furthermore, n-ary relations may be constructed out of sets of basic binary relations.   For example, the degree 4 relation EMPLOYEE_DEPT_SALARY_SEX, for which a typical entry might be

(SMITH, 02, 1200, male),

is semantically equivalent to (i.e., contains the same information as) the three binary relations WORKS_IN_DEPT, HAS_SALARY_OF and SEX, as illustrated in Figure 2.2.   We could build up n-ary relation tuples out of tuple-ids of binary relations, as illustrated in Figure 2.3.   In this approach, the original data entities (SMITH, 01, 1200, male), would be stored in permanent binary relations, and all other relations would be constructed out of binary tuple ids.   Tuple ids, being uniform binary numbers, are easy and efficient to manipulate.

A number of other implementations of n-ary relations is also possible.   The point is, however, that once we have an

WORKS_IN_DEPT
(NAME) (DEPT)

```
  .    .
  .    .
SMITH  02
  .    .
  .    .
  .    .
```

EMPLOYEE_DEPT_SALARY_SEX
(NAME)   (DEPT) (SALARY) (SEX)

```
  .       .        .        .
  .       .        .        .
  .       .        .        .
SMITH    02      12000    MALE
  .       .        .        .
  .       .        .        .
```

(DEGREE 4 RELATION)

HAS_SALARY_OF
(NAME) (SALARY)

```
  .       .
  .       .
SMITH   12000
  .       .
  .       .
```

SEX
(NAME) (SEX)

```
  .       .
  .       .
SMITH   MALE
  .       .
  .       .
```

(BINARY RELATIONS)

Figure 2.2 An Example 4-ary Relation

-38-

WORKS_IN_DEPT

EMPLOYEE_DEPT_SALARY_SEX

The 4-ary tuple
(SMITH, 02, 12000, MALE)
would then be stored
as:

SMITH	02	0	37

TUPLE
ID

HAS_SALARY_OF

ID_1	ID_2	ID_3

SMITH	12000	2	94

037	294	556

RELATION
CODE

SEX

SMITH	MALE	5	56

Figure 2.3   An Example Implementation of
            N-ary Relations

RELATION A

(NAME)	(AGE)	(SKILL)	ID
.	.	.	
.	.	.	
SMITH	27	WELDER	2 ¦27
SMITH	27	JOINER	2 ¦28
.	.	.	
.	.	.	
.	.	.	

"META-RELATION"
COMMON_SKILL

(A_{ID}) (B_{ID})

Relation

Tuple

227   493

RELATION B

(DEPT.)	(LOCAT.)	(SKILL)	ID
.	.	.	
.	.	.	
02	271-4	WELDER	4 ¦93
02	271-4	FITTER	4 ¦94
02	271-4	SMOOTHER	4 ¦95
.	.	.	
.	.	.	

Figure 2.4   Links Among N-ary Relations

-40-

efficient implementation of binary relations, general n-ary

relations may be constructed in a straightforward fashion

out of the binary relations without actually having to

retreat -- conceptually or physically -- back to the level

of basic entities or entity sets. In other words, n-ary

relation functions (to manipulate n-ary relations) can be

implemented by appropriately combining binary relation func-

tions.

2.2.2.4   Links Among N-ary Relations

The various n-ary relations in a typical database would

generally possess a number of logical interconnections. For

example, one relation might contain data on employees and

the skills each employee possesses, while another might

involve data on departments and the skills each department

requires to function. The logical relationship between the

tuples in these relations could be employed to extend the

database structure further, by incorporating a set of

"meta-relations" for storing information about such links

between the regular n-ary relations. The role of the meta-

relations would be to identify related tuples, and to pro-

vide some semantic information regarding the nature of the

interrelationships. In the example cited above, it would

make sense to establish a meta-relation connecting the

appropriate tuples in the original two relations on the

basis of "common skill", as shown in Figure 2.4. Under the implementation approach illustrated in Figure 2.4, meta-relations would themselves be n-ary relations. The only difference between them and regular n-ary relations lies in the interpretation of their entries. Therefore, all of the previously designed mechanisms for building and managing n-ary relations could also be used with the meta-relations. Only the interpretation of the elements within these relations would be different.

By incorporating linking information among the different n-ary relations in a database, either permanently or temporarily, directly into the database structure itself, it would be possible to generate more complex systems that would be capable of presenting different interfaces to different users, depending on the needs and objectives of the users themselves.

2.2.2.5   Virtual Information

It is not always necessary, or even desirable, that a database contain all the information that users might wish to access. Sometimes data interrelationships are algorithmic in nature, such that certain values may be unambiguously derived from others that are already stored in the database. This gives rise to the concept of "virtual" information (Folinus et al., 1974).

If an employee's BIRTH_DATE is stored in a database, and the CURRENT_DATE is also available, then the employee's AGE could be calculated by a simple algorithm and need not also be stored. If this is in fact done, then the employee's AGE would be an example of "virtual" data -- information that appears (to the database user) to be stored there, but which is not actually present as an entity in the database.

There are a number of advantages to "virtualizing" data in a database. These include:

1. Greater accuracy: for example, an employee's AGE could be calculated as accurately as necessary if included as virtual data, whereas it would always be somewhat "old" if it were simply stored as a database entity;

2. Elimination of updating: virtual data items themselves never need updating;

3. Reduced redundancy: including, for example, BIRTH_DATE, CURRENT_DATE, and AGE as three separate items in a database is redundant, and inconsistent data relationships can easily result if some of the items are updated independently of others;

4. Savings in storage: in many cases, the database
   storage space required to store items such as AGE
   directly would be much larger than that required
   to store the coded algorithm for calculating AGE
   from other data.

One way of implementing a virtual information capability is
to extend the definition of n-ary relations to include tuple
identifiers ("ids") that would in fact not refer to binary
relation tuples, but rather would point to procedures for
calculating the virtual data items. Consider a simple
employee relation of degree four, containing real data items
NAME, BIRTH_DATE, and SALARY, plus a virtual data item AGE.
The organization of this 4-tuple would then appear as in
Figure 2.5.

2.2.2.6   Data Verification and Access Control

   Data verification is the process of checking entries into
a database for qualities such as reasonableness (e.g., a
person's age should be no greater than, say, 125 years), and
consistency (e.g., the sum of the months worked in various
departments by an employee should sum to the number of
months worked for the company). Access control is the pro-
cess of controlling the database with regard to data
retrieval, update, deletion, database reorganization, etc.

Figure 2.5   Representation of Virtual Information

Figure 2.6   An Example Data Verification Scheme

For example, department managers may be granted authoriza-

tion to view the employee records of only the employees

working in their own departments; the database administra-

tor, on the other hand, may have access to all the records

in the database. The database administrator may also be the

only person with authority to reorganize the entire data-

base.

Access control also involves considerations such as the

identification of valid users through use of passwords and

other such techniques, mechanisms for allowing users to spe-

cify the type of access (read only, read/write, execute

only, etc.) for files, and allowing users to segment files,

so as to restrict parts of interconnected programs or data

files from certain kinds of access by certain specified

users (an example of a system that has implemented this suc-

cessfully is the MULTICS system).

Both data validity and access control could be imple-

mented in the hierarchical structure being discussed here in

a variety of ways. For example, the basic n-ary relations

could be further extended to include special control and

verification tuples. If data verification were to be per-

formed upon data entries in a certain domain of a relation,

that domain could be flagged in a "verification tuple", and

a data verification routine would be called upon data inser-

tion or update to check the appropriateness of each entry (see Figure 2.6).

Similarly, control of access to various domains or tuples could be performed by setting control bits in a special control tuple or domain, and including, for example, an address pointer to a list of authorized user passwords, against which the current user could be checked. These control tuples or flag bits would serve to describe certain "views", or combinations of data elements, that each user would be permitted to access. Alternately, they could be used to describe elements, domains, tuples, or entire relations that a user was not permitted to view.

Note that these implementations would utilize the mechanisms employed to provide virtual information as discussed above (i.e., certain ids are used to point to verification procedures, as they pointed to "virtual information computation procedures" in the preceding section). Thus, the verification and access control functions can be realized in terms of those responsible for virtual information.

2.2.2.7   High-level Language Interface

The user interface, through the data manipulation language, basically specifies the way in which the database may be accessed by the users. In this regard, there are three main approaches to manipulating a database, corresponding

roughly to the three basic models of database organization (network, hierarchical, and relational.):

1. An application programmer may wish to 'navigate' (Bachman, 1975; Codasyl, 1971) a database by using the data manipulation language to trace through the data groupings (relations) and interconnecting linkages (links between n-ary relations). This approach to database manipulation is usually more complex than some others, and demands a greater sophistication on the part of the applications programmer. He must, for example, be fully aware of the existence of all the links connecting the various data groupings, whereas this knowledge is not necessarily demanded of programmers using other data manipulation languages. In return for the greater complexity, the navigational approach usually offers greater accessing efficiency and better overall database manipulation performance, especially when dealing with large and complex databases.

2. A user may wish to organize and manipulate the database as a hierarchical tree structure, wherein the logical interconnections between data group-ings are always one-to-many in nature. In a

sense, the manipulation of a hierarchical tree
structure is a special case of the general naviga-
tional approach. Hierarchical structures do, how-
ever, allow a number of simplifications to be made
in designing the database management system, as
well as in the data manipulation language. Furth-
ermore, a surprisingly large number of situations
in the real world may be effectively represented
with a hierarchical tree data organization, so it
is worthwhile to treat hierarchical structure as
an important special case.

3. Finally, in many cases it is appropriate for the
    applications programmer to access the database
    directly in terms of its underlying binary or
    n-ary relations (Codd, 1970; Codd, 1974). Such
    "direct" manipulation may be made at a relatively
    low level, in terms of individual relations and
    primitive operations (using the relational alge-
    bra) upon them. Alternately, a higher-level
    interface could be used to translate more general-
    purpose commands (using the relational calculus)
    into lower-level operations. Such low-level
    accessing methods generally provide greater effi-
    ciency, at the expense of greater programming
    detail.

2.2.3   INFOPLEX's Approach to Functional Decomposition

The above discussions illustrate one possible decomposition of the information management functions into hierarchical levels. Other decompositions are possible. For example, the work of (Senko, 1976; Yeh et al., 1977; Toh et al., 1977; ANSI, 1975) also decomposes the various information management functions into several levels (e.g., (1) physical data storage, (2) logical data encoding, (3) access path, (4) internal schema, and (5) external schema). A common weakness of these functional decompositions, including our example decompositon, is that although any particular decomposition may make good sense and impose a reasonable conceptual structure on the information management function, there are no commonly accepted criteria with which to evaluate any given decomposition.

A common qualitative criteria often used to decompose complex functions into sub-modules is that of modularity. A decomposition is considered to attain high modularity when each individual module is internally coherent, and all the modules are loosely coupled with one another. One of the INFOPLEX research focuses is to develop methodologies to formalize this notion of modularity quantitatively, and to use it to evaluate a given decomposition, thus systematic techniques for obtaining an optimal functional decomposition

of the information management functions can be developed. A particularly promising approach for this purpose is the Systematic Design Methodology (Huff and Madnick, 1978). The following briefly describes this approach.

The Systematic Design Methodology approach to system design centers on the problem of identifying a system's modules, or "sub-problems", their functions, and their interconnections. Using this approach, we begin with a set of functional requirement statements for the INFOPLEX information management functions. Each pair of requirements is examined in turn, and a decision as to whether a significant degree of interdependence between the two requirements exists is made. Then the resulting information is represented as a non-directed graph structure: nodes are requirement statements, links are assessed interdependencies. The graph is then partitioned with the objective of locating a good decomposition. An index of partition goodness is employed, which incorporates measures of subgraph "strength" and "coupling". The actual goodness index is taken as the algebraic difference between the strengths of all the subgraphs, and the inter-subgraph couplings. That is, $M=S-C$, where S is the sum of the strength measures of all subgraphs, and C is the sum of all the inter-subgraph couplings.

Once an agreeable partition is determined, the resulting sets of requirements are interpreted as "design sub-problems". From these design sub-problems a functional hierarchy of INFOPLEX can then be systematically derived. This procedure is illustrated in Figure 2.7. This approach is currently being developed in the INFOPLEX Project.

2.3   THE INFOPLEX DATA STORAGE HIERARCHY

To provide a high performance, highly reliable, and large capacity storage system, INFOPLEX makes use of an automatically managed memory hierarchy (referred to as the INFOPLEX physical decomposition). In this section, the rationale for and an example of an automatic memory hierarchy are discussed. Then the INFOPLEX approach to realize such a memory hierarchy is also discussed.

2.3.1   Rationale for a Storage Hierarchy

The technologies that lend themselves to low cost-per-byte storage devices (and, thereby, economical large capacity storage) result in relatively slow access times. If it was possible to produce ultra-fast limitless-capacity storage devices for miniscule cost, there would be little need for a physical decomposition of the storage. Lacking such a wondrous device, the requirements of high performance at low cost are best satisfied by a mixture of technologies combin-

Figure 2.7   INFOPLEX's Approach to Functional
             Decomposition

ing expensive high-performance devices with inexpensive
lower-performance devices.

There are many ways that such an ensemble of storage dev-
ices may be structured, but the technique of hierarchical
physical decomposition has been found to be very effective
(Madnick, 1973; Madnick, 1975a; Madnick, 1975b). Using this
technique, the ensemble of heterogeneous storage devices is
organized as a hierarchy. Information is moved between sto-
rage levels automatically depending upon actual or antici-
pated usage such that the information most likely to be
referenced in the future is kept at the highest (most easily
accessed) levels.

The effectiveness of a memory hierarchy depends heavily
on the phenomonon known as locality of reference (Denning,
1970). A memory hierarchy makes use of this property of
information reference pattern so that the information that
is used frequently would be accessible through the higher
levels of the hierarchy, giving the memory hierarchy an
expected access time close to that of the access time of the
faster memories. This approach has been used in contempo-
rary computer systems in cache memory systems (Conti, 1969),
in virtual memory demand paging systems (Bensoussan et al.,
1969; Greenberg and Webber, 1975; Hatfield, 1972; Mattson et
al., 1970; Meade, 1970), and in mass storage systems (Consi-
dine and Weis, 1969; Johnson, 1975).

Experimentations with physical data reference strings are reported in (Easton, 1978; Rodriguez-Rosell, 1976; Smith, 1978b). It has been found that there is considerable sequentiality of physical database reference in these studies. Sequentiality of references is a special form of spatial locality as discussed by (Madnick, 1973). Several measures of logical database locality and experimentations with these measures are reported in (McCabe, 1978; Robidoux, 1979). The observations from these experiments are encouraging. In particular they indicate that there is considerable locality of database reference.

2.3.2   Example of a Physical Decomposition

We now discuss an example of a memory hierarchy, its general structure, types of storage devices that it may employ, and some strategies for automatic information movement in the hierarchy.

2.3.2.1   General Structure

To the user (i.e. the lowest level of the functional hierarchy) of the memory hierarchy, the memory appears as a very large linear virtual address space with a small access time. The fact that the memory is actually a hierarchy or that a certain block of information can be obtained from a certain level is hidden from the memory user. Figure 2.8

storage references

controller

bus

1. CACHE

2. MAIN

3. BLOCK

4. BACKING

5. SECONDARY

6. MASS

Figure 2.8   An Example Memory Hierarchy

	Storage Level	Random Access Time	Sequential Transfer Rate (bytes/sec)	Unit Capacity (bytes)	System Price (per byte)
1.	Cache	100 ns	100M	32K	50¢
2.	Main	1 us	16M	512K	10¢
3.	Block	100 us	8M	2M	2¢
4.	Backing	2 ms	2M	10M	0.5¢
5.	Secondary	25 ms	1M	100M	0.02¢
6.	Mass	1 sec.	1M	100B	0.0005¢

Figure 2.9   Example Storage Devices

illustrates the general structure of a memory hierarchy consisting of six levels of storage devices. Some of the devices that can be used in these levels are discussed in the next subsection.

The lowest level always contains all the information of the system. A high level always contains a subset of the information in the next lower level. To satisfy a request, the information in the highest (most easily accessed) level is used.

Storage reference is accomplished by supplying the memory hierarchy with a virtual address (say a 64-bit address), the memory hierarchy will determine where the addressed information is physically located. The addressed information will be moved up the memory hierarchy if it is found in other than the highest level of the hierarchy. This implies that there is a high variance in the access time of the memory system. This situation is alleviated by providing multiple ports to the memory system so that a pipeline of requests can be processed. Furthermore, the inherent parallelism within each memory level and among different memory levels provides high throughput for the memory system as a whole. Since the functional levels are designed with high parallelism of operation as one of its major objectives, the processor making the request can take advantage of the high memory

access time variance. Various schemes are used to make the automatic management of the memory hierarchy efficient. Some of these strategies are discussed in a latter section.

2.3.2.2   Storage Devices

Traditionally, computer direct access storage has been dominated by two fairly distinct technologies: (1) ferrite core and, later, metallic oxide semiconductor (MOS) LSI memories with microsecond access times and relatively high costs, and (2) rotating magnetic media (magnetic drums and disks) with access time in the range of 10 to 100 millise- · conds and relatively low costs. This has led to the separation between main storage and secondary storage devices.

Recently several new memory technologies, most notably magnetic bubbles, electron beam addressed memories (EBAM), and charge coupled devices (CCD), have emerged to fill the "gap" between the two traditional memory technologies.

The evolution and increasing deployment of the above and many other memory technologies have produced a more continuous cost-performance range of storage devices, as depicted in Figure 2.9 (Madnick, 1975a). Note that these technologies, which are arbitrarily grouped into six categories, result in storage devices that span more than six orders of magnitude in both random access time (from less than 100

nanoseconds to more than 1 second) and system price per byte (from more than 50 cents per byte to less than 0.0005 cent).

This evolution has facilitated the choice of appropriate cost-effective storage devices for the memory hierarchy. For example, for the memory hierarchy discussed in the previous section, we might use a device like the IBM 3850 Mass Storage as the mass storage, traditional moving head disks as secondary storage, magnetic drums as backing store, CCD or magnetic bubble as block store, core or semiconductor RAM as main storage, and high performance semiconductor RAM as cache.

2.3.2.3   Strategies for Information Movement

Various physical storage management and movement techniques, such as page splitting, read through, and store behind, can be distributed within the memory hierarchy. This facilitates parallel and asynchronous operation in the hierarchy. Furthermore, these approaches can lead to greatly increased reliability of operation. For example, under the read through strategy (Figure 2.10), when data currently stored at level i (and all lower performance levels) is referenced, it is automatically and simultaneously copied and stored into all higher performance levels. The data itself is moved between levels in standard transfer

Figure 2.10   Illustration of Read Through

units, also called pages, whose size N (i-1, i) depends upon the storage level from which it is being moved.

For example, suppose that the datum "a", at level 3, is referenced (see Figure 2.10). The block of size N(2,3) containing "a" is extracted and moved up the data bus. Level 2 extracts this block of data and stores it in its memory modules. At the same time, level 1 extracts a sub-block of size N(1,2) containing "a" and level 0 extracts the sub-block of size N(0,1) containing "a" from the data bus.

Hence, under the read through strategy, all upper storage levels receive this information simultaneously. If a storage level must be removed from the system, there are no changes needed. In this case, the information is "read through" the level as if it didn't exist. Since all data available at level i is also available at level i + 1 (and all other lower performance levels), there is no information lost. Thus, no changes are needed to any of the other storage levels or the storage management algorithms although we would expect the performance to decrease as a result of the missing storage level. A limited form of this reliability strategy is employed in most current-day cache memory systems (Conti, 1969).

In a store behind strategy all information to be changed
is first stored in L(1), the highest performance storage
level. This information is marked "changed" and is copied
into L(2) as soon as possible, usually during a time when
there is little or no activity between L(1) and L(2). At a
later time, the information is copied from L(2) to L(3),
etc. A variation on this strategy is used in the MULTICS
Multilevel Paging Hierarchy (Greenberg and Webber, 1975).
This strategy facilitates more even usage of the bus between
levels by only scheduling data transfers between levels dur-
ing idle bus cycles. Furthermore, the time required for a
write is only limited by the speed of the highest level
memory.

The store behind strategy can be used to provide high
reliability in the storage system. Ordinarily, a changed
page is not allowed to be purged from a storage level until
the next lower level has been updated. This can be extended
to require two levels of acknowledgment. Under such a stra-
tegy, a changed page cannot be removed from L(1) until the
corresponding pages in both L(2) and L(3) have been updated.
In this way, there will be at least two copies of each
changed piece of information at levels L(i) and L(i+1) in
the hierarchy. Other than slightly delaying the time at
which a page may be purged from a level, this approach does

not significantly affect system performance. As a result of this technique, if any level malfunctions, it can be removed from the hierarchy without causing any information to be lost. There are two exceptions to this process, L(1) and L(n). To completely safeguard the reliability of the system, it may be necessary to store duplicate copies of information at these levels only.

Figure 2.11 illustrates this process. In Figure 2.11(a), a processor stores into L(1), the corresponding page is marked "changed" and "no lower level copy exists". Figure 2.11(b) shows in a latter time, the corresponding page in L(2) is updated and marked "changed" and "no lower level copy exists". An acknowledgment is sent to L(1) so that the corresponding page is marked "one lower level copy exists". At a later time (Figure 2.11(c)), the corresponding page in L(3) is updated and marked "changed" and "no lower level copy exists". An acknowledgment is sent to L(2) so that the corresponding page is marked "one lower level copy exists". An acknowledgment is sent to L(1) so that the corresponding page is marked "two lower level copy exists". At this time, the page in L(1) may be replaced if necessary, since then there will be at least two copies of the updated information in the lower memory levels.

Figure 2.11(a)   Store Behind (a)

Figure 2.11(b)   Store Behind (b)

Figure 2.11(c)   Store Behind (c)

2.3.3 INFOPLEX's Approach to Physical Decomposition

In the previous section, we have illustrated an example of a memory hierarchy that makes use of an ensemble of heterogeneous storage devices. Although memory hierarchies using two or three levels of storage devices have been implemented, no known generalized automatic memory hierarchy has been developed.

The optimality of a memory hierarchy depends on the complex interactions among the memory reference pattern, the device characteristics, and the information movement strategies. The INFOPLEX approach to this complex problem is to empirically study and characterize data reference patterns at several levels (e.g. transaction level, logical data level, and physical data level), to develop various information movement strategies, and to design a prototype memory hierarchy. The interactions among these components can then be systematically investigated by means of analytic models and simulation models.

2.4 RESEARCH ISSUES ADDRESSED IN THIS THESIS

This chapter has provided the background for this thesis. As is evident from the above discussions, there are a large number of interesting but unresolved research problems associated with INFOPLEX. This thesis is a key step towards

understanding the INFOPLEX data storage hierarchy. In particular, this thesis has made contributions in the following areas:

1. Developed and extended concepts for the INFOPLEX data base computer and data storage hierarchy systems.

2. Provided a theoretic foundation for analysis of data storage hierarchy systems.

3. Formalized storage management algorithms to incorporate the read-through strategy.

4. Provided detail analysis of the performance and reliability properties of data storage hierarchies and their algorithms.

5. Designed prototype data storage hierarchy systems for INFOPLEX.

6. Developed simulation models to obtain insights to the data storage hierarchy designs and their algorithms.

These are elaborated in the following chapters.

Chapter III

A GENERAL STRUCTURE OF THE INFOPLEX DATA STORAGE HIERARCHY

3.1 INTRODUCTION

This chapter proposes the general structure of a data
storage hierarchy system for the INFOPLEX data base compu-
ter. The design of this system is based on Madnick's pro-
posed system (Madnick, 1973). This work brings Madnick's
system one step closer to realization. In the following,
the underlying design goals of this data storage hierarchy
system will be discussed. Then the design, called DSH-1, is
introduced followed by a discussion of further design issues
that need to be addressed.

3.2 DESIGN OBJECTIVES

There are a large number of practical storage hierarchy
systems today. However, the functionality provided by each
is quite different and often falls short of our expectations
(for use as the storage subsystem of the INFOPLEX data base
computer). In the following, we discuss the underlying
design goals of DSH-1.

3.2.1 Virtual Address Space

DSH-1 provides a virtual address space for data storage. Every data item in DSH-1 is byte addressable using a generalized virtual address. A key advantage of a virtual address space is that a user (a processor) of DSH-1 is relieved of all physical device concerns. In fact, the processor accessing DSH-1 is not aware of how the virtual address space is implemented. This latter characteristic is quite unique since most current virtual memory systems are simulated, at least partially, by software executed by the processor, e.g., the IBM OS/VS system (Scherr, 1973).

3.2.2 Very Large Address Space

Early virtual memory systems were developed primarily for program storage, hence their address spaces were quite limited, e.g., in the order of one million bytes. The MULTICS (Greenberg and Webber, 1975) virtual memory and the IBM System/38 (Datamation, 1978; Soltis and Hoffman, 1979) logical storage were developed for program as well as data file storage. These systems support a large virtual address space. However, the size of an individual data file in MULTICS is limited to 2**18 bytes and that in System/38 is limited to 2**24 bytes. Though these are very large address spaces, it is expected that future systems will require online storage capacities that are much larger. DSH-1 uses a 64-bit vir-

tual address. Each byte is directly addressable, hence
there is virtually no limit on the size of a logical entity
such as a data file.

3.2.3   Permanent Data Storage

Accesses to permanent data is performed by special soft-
ware routines and a special I/O processor in most virtual
memory systems. The I/O processor brings the data into the
virtual memory and writes the data back to permanent storage
when the data is updated. Systems like MULTICS and Sys-
tem/38 provide a permanent virtual data storage. Any data
in virtual memory is also in permanent storage. DSH-1 also
provides a permanent virtual data storage. Special data
integrity schemes are used to ensure that as soon as a pro-
cessor completes a write operation to a virtual location,
the effect of the write becomes permanent even in the event
of a power failure.

3.2.4   Support Multiple Processors

Most current virtual memory systems have been limited to
supporting 2 to 3 processors. It is necessary that DSH-1
support a large number of processors due to the requirements
for high performance and high availability to be discussed
below. All these processors share the same virtual data
address space. Appropriate synchronization and protection
schemes are used to ensure data integrity and security.

3.2.5 Generalized Multi-level Storage System

To provide a large capacity storage subsystem with low
cost and high performance, a spectrum of storage devices
arranged in a hierarchy is used. Previous storage hierarchy
systems have been specially designed for a specific 2 or 3
levels hierarchy (e.g., cache and main memory, or main
memory and secondary storage device). Thus, it is extremely
difficult to add or remove a storage level in these systems.
DSH-1 is designed to incorporate any type of storage device
and support reconfiguration of storage levels. This charac-
teristic is particularly important in responding to new dev-
ice technologies.

3.2.6 Direct Inter-level Data Transfer

In most current storage hierarchy systems, data movement
among storage levels is performed indirectly. For example,
to move data from drum to disk in the MULTICS system, data
is read from drum into main memory by the processor which
then writes the data to disk. Recent developments in sto-
rage systems make it possible to decentralize the control of
data movement between storage devices to intelligent con-
trollers at the storage devices. For example, the IBM 3850
Mass Storage (Johnson, 1975) uses an intelligent controller
to handle data transfer between mass storage and disks, mak-
ing the 3850 appear as a very large number of virtual disks.

DSH-1 incorporates intelligent controllers at each storage level to implement the algorithms for data movement among the storage levels. Special algorithms are developed to facilitate efficient broadcasting of data from a storage level to all other storage levels as well as movement of data between adjacent storage levels.

3.2.7 High performance

To support the data requirements of the functional processors in INFOPLEX, DSH-1 is designed to handle a large number of requests simultaneously. The operation of DSH-1 is highly parallel and asychronous. Thus, many requests may be in different stages of completion at various storage levels of DSH-1. Each processor accesses DSH-1 through a data cache where the most frequently used data items are stored.

3.2.8 Availability

High availability of DSH-1 is a result of a combination of the design strategy used, hardware commonality, and special algorithms. Key design strategies in DSH-1 include the use of distributed controls and simple bus structures, both of which contribute to the high availability of DSH-1. Multiple identical hardware components are used in parallel to provide high performance and to ensure that no single component is critical to system operation. Integrated into the

design are certain algorithms that exploit the structure of DSH-1 to allow data redundancy and perform automatic data repair in the event of component failure, thus diminishing the dangers of multiple failures.

3.2.9   Modularity

DSH-1 is modular at several levels. This provides much flexibility in system structuring. The number of processors to be supported by DSH-1 can be varied. The number of storage levels and the type of storage devices can be chosen to meet the particular capacity and performance requirements. All the storage levels have very similar structures and the same algorithm is used by the intelligent controllers at each storage level.

Flexibility in system structuring is extended in DSH-1 to allow for dynamic system reconfiguration. For example, a defective storage device or storage level can be amputated without loss of system availability.

An example of a system that also incorporates modularity as a key design goal is the PLURIBUS (Katsuki et. al., 1978) system. In PLURIBUS, the basic building block is a bus module. The number of components on a bus module as well as the number of bus modules can be easily varied to meet different system requirements.

3.2.10   Low Cost

A storage hierarchy is the lowest cost configuration to meet the requirement of providing a large storage capacity with high performance.   DSH-1 also make use of common hardware modules as the intelligent controllers at each storage level, thus reducing hardware development cost.   The modularity features of DSH-1 discussed above also facilitate system upgrading with minimum cost.

Commonality of hardware modules and flexibility of system upgrade have been employed in many computer systems as an effective approach to reduce cost.   However, these techniques are rarely applied to storage hierarchy systems.   DSH-1 is a step in this direction.

Advances in storage device and processor technologies provide great potentials for development of very effective data storage hierarchies that incorporate the above characteristics.   In the next section, we describe a general structure of such a system.

3.3   GENERAL STRUCTURE OF DSH-1

The structure of DSH-1 is illustrated in Figure 3.1.   A key design decision in DSH-1 is to make use of an asynchronous time-shared bus for interconnecting multiple components (processors and memory modules) within a storage level and

Figure 3.1 Structure of DSH-1

to make use of an asynchronous time-shared bus for interconnecting all the storage levels. A key advantage of the time-shared bus is its simplicity, flexibility, and throughput. Two alternative approaches can be used in DSH-1 to increase the effective bandwidth of the time-shared bus. First, a new pended-bus protocol can be used (Haagens, 1978). This asynchronous bus protocol is more efficient than the usual time-shared bus protocols with the result that a much larger number of components can share a single bus. Second, multiple logical buses can be used to partition the load on the time-shared bus.

In the following subsections, we shall describe the interface to DSH-1 as seen by a functional hierarchy processor. Then the structure of DSH-1 is described by examining its highest performance storage level and then a typical storage level.

3.3.1 The DSH-1 Interface

To the functional hierarchy processors connected to DSH-1, DSH-1 appears as a large multi-port main memory. There are K memory ports, hence K processors can simultaneously access DSH-1.

The functional processors use a $2**V$ (V=64) byte virtual address space. The instructions for each functional hier-

archy processor are stored in a separate 2**I byte program memory. The program memories are not part of DSH-1. Thus, 2**I bytes of the processor's address space is mapped by the program memories, leaving 2**V-2**I bytes of data memory to be managed by DSH-1. This is depicted in Figures 3.2(a) and 3.2(b).

Each processor has multiple register sets to support efficient multiprogramming. Some of the more important registers for interfacing with DSH-1 are : (1) a V-bit Memory Address Register (MAR) for holding the virtual address, (2) a Memory Buffer Register (MBR) for storing the data read from DSH-1 and to be written into DSH-1, (3) a Memory Operation Register (MOR) indicates the particular operation to be performed by DSH-1, (4) an Operation Status Register (OSR) which indicates the result of a operation performed by DSH-1, and (5) a Process Identifier Register (PIR) which contains the Process Identifier (PID) of the process that is currently using the processor.

A number of memory operations are possible. The key ones are the read and write operations and the primitives for locking a data item (such as those supporting the Test-and-Set type of operations).

Figure 3.2(a)   The DSH-1 Interface

Figure 3.2(b)   The DSH-1 Address Space

All read and write operations to DSH-1 are performed in the highest performance storage level, L(1). If a referenced data item is not in L(1), it is brought up to L(1) from a lower storage level via a read-through operation. The effect of an update to a data item in L(1) is propagated down to the lower storage levels via a number of store-behind operations.

In a read operation, two results can occur depending on the state of DSH-1. First, if the requested data is already in L(1), the MBR is filled with the data bytes starting at location (MAR) and the processor continues with the next operation. Alternatively, the addressed data may not be available in L(1). In this case, the processor is interrupted, the OSR is set to indicate that it may take a while for the read operation to complete, and the processor is switched to another process. In the meantime, the addressed data is copied into L(1) from a lower storage level. When this is completed, the processor is notified of the completion of the original read operation.

Similarly, a write operation may result in two possible responses from DSH-1. First, if the data to be updated is already in L(1), the bytes in MBR are written to the virtual address locations starting at (MAR), and the processor continues with the next operation. Second, a delay similar to

the read operation may occur (when the data to be updated is
not in L(1)), while DSH-1 retrieves the data from a lower
storage level.

This concludes a brief description of the asynchronous
DSH-1 interface, as seen by a functional hierarchy proces-
sor. Next, we examine the structure of DSH-1.

3.3.2   The Highest Performance Storage Level - L(1)

There are h storage levels in DSH-1, labelled L(1), L(2),
L(3), ..., L(h). L(1) is the highest performance storage
level. L(i) denotes a typical storage level. The structure
of L(1) is unique. The structures of all other storage lev-
els are similar.

A distinction must be made between the concept of a phy-
sical bus and a logical bus. The former refers to the
actual hardware that implements communications among levels
and within a level. A logical bus may be implemented using
one or more physical buses. Logical buses represent a par-
titioning, based upon the virtual address referenced, of the
physical buses.

Referring to Figure 3.1, L(1) consists of K memory ports
and S(1) storage level controllers (SLC's) on each of B(1)
logical local buses (i.e., S(1)*B(1) SLC's in total for this

level). Each memory port consists of a data cache controller (DCC) and a data cache duplex (DCD). A DCC interfaces with the functional hierarchy processor that is connected to the memory port. A DCC also performs mapping of a virtual address generated by the processor to a physical address in the DCD. Another function of DCC is to interface with other DCC's (e.g., to maintain data cache consistency), and with SLC's on the logical bus (for communications with other storage levels).

At L(1), a SLC accepts requests to lower storage levels from the DCC's and forwards them to a SLC at the next lower storage level. When the responses to these requests are ready, the SLC accepts them and sends them back to the appropriate DCC's. The SLC's also couple the local buses to the global buses. In essence, the SLC serves as a gateway between levels and they contend among themselves for use of the communication media, the logical buses.

At L(1), there are B(1) logical local buses. Each logical local bus consists of b(1) physical buses. Each logical bus handles a partition of the addresses. For example, if two logical buses were used, one might handle all odd numbered data blocks and the other would handle all the even numbered data blocks.

DSH-1 has $B(0)$ logical global buses. Each logical global bus consists of $b(0)$ global physical buses. The use of address partitioning increases the effective bus bandwidth. The use of multiple physical buses for each logical bus enhances reliability and performance.

3.3.3 A Typical Storage Level - L(i)

A typical storage level, $L(i)$, is divided into $B(i)$ address partitions. Each address partition consists of $S(i)$ SLC's, $P(i)$ memory request processors (MRP's), and $D(i)$ storage device modules (SDM's), all sharing a logical bus. A logical bus consists of $b(i)$ physical buses.

An SLC is the communication gateway between the MRP's/SDM's of its level and the other storage levels.

An MRP performs the address mapping function. It contains a directory of all the data maintained in the address partition. Using this directory, an MRP can quickly determine if a virtual address corresponds to any data in the address partition, and if so, what the real address is for the data. This real address can be used by the corresponding SDM to retrieve the data. Since each MRP contains a copy of this directory, updates to the directory have to be handled with care, so that all the MRP's see a consistent copy of the directory.

An SDM performs the actual reading and writing of data.
It also communicates with the MRP's and the SLC's.

The SLC's, MRP's, and SDM's cooperate to handle a memory
request. An SLC communicates with other storage levels and
passes requests to an MRP to perform the address transla-
tion. The appropriate SDM is then initiated to read or
write the data. The response is then sent to another SLC at
another storage level.

3.4 FURTHER DESIGN ISSUES

The previous section describes the general structure of
DSH-1. From this general structure, a number of interesting
alternative configurations can be obtained. For example, if
all the data caches are taken away, L(1) becomes a level
with only the SLC's for communicating the requests from the
processors to the lower storage levels and for obtaining
responses from these lower storage levels. This configura-
tion eliminates the data consistency problems associated
with multiple data caches.

If we let the number of logical buses be equal to one, we
obtain the configuration without address partitioning.

Another intersting configuration is when there is only
one MRP and one SDM on a given logical bus. This configura-

tion eliminates the need for multiple identical directory updates.

Thus, by varying the design parameters of DSH-1, a large number of alternative configurations with quite different characteristics can be obtained. The general structure is a valuable vehicle for investigating various design issues. Some of the key issues are briefly introduced in the following sections.

3.4.1   Support of Read and Write Operations

Key problems in supporting the read and write operations in DSH-1 include :   (1)   data consistency in multiple data caches, (2)   protocols for communicating over the shared bus, (3)   algorithms for updating the redundant directories, (4)   algorithms for arbitrating among usage of identical resources, such as buses, SLC's and MRP's, and (5)   specifying the various steps (transactions) that have to be accomplished to handle the read and write operations.

3.4.1.1   Multiple Cache Consistency

As illustrated in Figure 3.1, each DSH-1 memory port is a data cache directly addressable by the processor at the port.   It is possible then, that a data item may be in several different data caches at the same time.   When the data

item gets updated by a processor, other processors may reference an inconsistent copy of the data item. The multiple cache consistency problem and its solutions are discussed in (Tang, 1976; Censier and Feautrier, 1978).

Three basic approaches can be used to resolve this problem in DSH-1. The first approach is to send a purge request to all other data caches whenever a processor updates data in its cache. The second approach is to maintain status information about the data cache contents. Whenever there is an update to a data item, this status information is consulted and purge requests are sent only to those caches that contain the data item being changed. The third approach is to make use of knowledge of how the data in DSH-1 is to be used so that the inconsistency problem can be avoided. For example, knowledge about the interlocking scheme used to ensure safe data sharing may be used to avoid uncessary purge requests to other caches.

3.4.1.2   Bus Communication Protocols

In DSH-1, the buses may be used for point-to-point communication as well as for broadcast type of communications. It is necessary to ensure that messages are sent and received correctly. For example, L(i) broadcast data to the upper levels and one or more of these levels may not be able

to accomodate the data to be received, possibly due to the
lack of buffer space. Communications protocols to handle
these situations are important.

3.4.1.3 Multiple Directory Update

Each MRP contains a directory of all the data in the
SDM's on the same bus. Multiple requests may be handled by
the MRP's. When a MRP updates its directory, other MRP's
may still reference the old copy of the directory. This is
similar but not identical to the multiple cache consistency
problem discussed above. It is necessary to maintain con-
sistency of the MRP directory states.

3.4.1.4 Multiple Resource Arbitration

Multiple identical resources (e.g., buses, MRP's, and
SLC's) are used in DSH-1 to provide parallel processing
while at the same time providing redundancy against failure.
A request for a resource can be satisfied by any one of the
resources. An arbitration scheme is required to control the
assignment of resource.

3.4.1.5 Transaction Handling

A read or a write request may go through a number of
asynchronous steps through a number of storage levels to
completion. A complication to these transactions is that

for high throughput, a request (or response) may be divided
into a number of messages when the request (or response) is
being transported within the hierarchy. Thus, a request (or
response) may have to be assembled, which may take an amount
of time dependent on the traffic within DSH-1. Partial
requests (responses) at a storage level require special han-
dling.

3.4.2 Multiple Data Redundancy Properties

As a result of the read-through operation, several copies
of a referenced data item exists in the DSH-1 storage lev-
els. The two-level store-behind operation also maintains at
least two copies of any updated data item in DSH-1. This is
a key reliability feature of DSH-1. It is important to know
under what conditions and using what types of algorithms can
this multiple data redundancy be maintained at all times.

3.4.3 Automatic Data Repair Algorithms

One of the benefits of maintaining redundant data in
DSH-1 is that lost data due to component failures can be
reconstructed on a spare component from a copy of the lost
data. By using automatic data repair in DSH-1 the probabil-
ity of multiple data loss can be reduced.

Two classes of automatic data repair algorithms are pos-
sible. One strategy is to make use of the multiple data
redundancy properties of DSH-1 and to reconstruct the lost
data from its copy in a different storage level. The other
approach is to maintain duplicate copies of the data item
within a storage level and to reconstruct the lost data from
its copy in the same storage level. The latter approach is
particularly attractive for low performance devices such as
mass storage.

3.4.4   Performance Evaluation

A key issue in the DSH-1 design is predicting its perfor-
mance. In order to accomplish this, a simplified design of
DSH-1 and its algorithms can be developed. A simulation
model can then be developed for this design. Various basic
performance statistics can then be obtained under various
load assumptions. This experiment will provide insights and
directions for further design efforts.

3.5   SUMMARY

The INFOPLEX storage hierarchy is a high performance high
availability virtual memory data storage hierarchy with dis-
tributed controls for data movement and address translation.
It is designed specifically to provide a very large perman-
ent virtual address space to support multiple functional
hierarchy processors.

A general structure of DSH-1, the INFOPLEX storage hier-
archy has been described in this chapter. This general
structure can be used to derive a large number of alterna-
tive configurations which can be used to explore various
algorithms for data storage hierarchy systems.

A number of important design issues associated with DSH-1
are also outlined.

Chapter IV

MODELLING AND ANALYSIS OF DATA STORAGE HIERARCHY SYSTEMS

4.1   INTRODUCTION

This chapter is aimed at modelling data storage hierarchy systems so as to study these systems from a theoretic point of view. These studies provide insights to the perfromance and reliability properties of data storage hierarchy systems and their algorithms. These insights provide guidance to developing effective data storage hierarchy systems.

Current research in storage hierarchy systems is reviewed and extended. A formal model of a data storage hierarchy which incorporates multiple page sizes and maintains multiple data redundancy is developed. The LRU algorithm is extended to include the read-through and overflow handling strategies in a multi-level storage hierarchy. Formal definitions for these extended algorithms are developed. Finally, important performance and reliability properties of data storage hierarchy systems are identified and analyzed in detail.

4.2   RESEARCH ON STORAGE HIERARCHY SYSTEMS

Two and three-level memory hierarchies have been used in practical computer systems (Conti, 1969; Johnson, 1975; Greeberg and Webber, 1975).   However, there is relatively little experience with general hierarchical storage systems.

One major area of theoretic study of storage hierarchy systems in the past has been the optimal placement of information in a storage hierarchy system.   Three approaches to this problem have been used: (1)   Static placement (Ramamoorthy and Chandy, 1970; Arola and Gallo, 1971; Chen, 1973) - this approach determines the optimal placement strategy statically, at the initiation of the system; (2)   Dynamic placement (Lum et al, 1975; Franaszek and Bennett, 1978) - this approach attempts to optimally place information in the hierarchy, taking into account the dynamically changing nature of access to information; (3)   Information structuring (Hatfield and Gerald, 1971; Jobnson J., 1975) - this approach manipulates the internal structure of information so that information items that are frequently used together are placed adjacent to each other.

Another major area of theoretic study of storage hierarchy systems has been the study of storage management algorithms (Belady, 1966; Belady et al, 1969; Denning, 1970; Mattson et al, 1970; Mattson, 1971; Hatfield, 1972; Madnick,

1973; Goldberg, 1974; Franklin et al, 1978). Here the study
of storage hierarchies and the study of virtual memory sys-
tems for program storage have overlapped considerably. This
is largely due the fact that most of the studies of storage
hierarchies in the past have been aimed at providing a vir-
tual memory for program storage. These studies usually do
not consider the effects of multiple page sizes across sto-
rage levels, nor the problem of providing redundant data
across storage levels as used in the system proposed by Mad-
nick (Madnick, 1973). These considerations are of great
importance for a storage hierarchy designed specifically for
very large data bases. The following sections extend theo-
ries on storage hierarchy to include systems that incorpo-
rate multiple page sizes and maintains multiple data redun-
dancy.

4.3 MODEL OF A DATA STORAGE HIERARCHY

A data storage hierarchy consists of h levels of storage devices, M^1, M^2, ..., M^h. The page size of M^i is Q_i and the size of M^i is m_i pages each of size Q_i. Q_i is always an integral multiple of Q_{i-1}, for i=2,3 ..., h. The unit of information transfer between M^i and M^{i+1} is a page, of size Q_i. Figure 4.1 illustrates this model of the data storage hierarchy.

All references are directed to M^1. The storage management algorithms automatically transfer information among storage levels. As a result, the data storage hierarchy appears to the reference source as a M^1 storage device with the size of M^h.

As a result of the storage management algorithms (to be discussed next), multiple copies of the same information may exist in different storage levels.

Figure 4.1 Model of a Data Storage Hierarchy

4.3.1 <u>Storage Management Algorithms</u>

We shall focus our attentions on the basic algorithms to support the <u>read-through</u> (Madnick, 1975) operation. Algorithms to support other operations can be derived from these basic algorithms.

In a read-through, the highest storage level that contains the addressed information broadcasts the information to all upper storage levels, each of which simultaneously extracts the page (of the appropriate size) that contains the information from the broadcast. If the addressed information is found in the highest storage level, the read-through reduces to a simple reference to the addressed information in that level. Figure 4.2 illustrates the read-through operation.

Note that in order to load a new page into a storage level an existing page may have to be displaced from that storage level. We refer to this phenomenon as <u>overflow</u>. Hence, the basic reference cycle consists of two sub-cycles, the read-through cycle (RT), and the overflow handling cycle (OH), with RT preceeding OH.

For example, Figure 4.2 illustrates the basic reference cycle to handle a reference to the page p_{ya}^1. During the Read-Through (RT) subcycle, the highest storage level (M^x) that contains p_{ya}^1 broadcasts the page containing P_{ya}^1 to all upper storage levels, each of which extracts the

-98-

Figure 4.2   The Read Through Operation

page of appropriate size that contains P_{ya}^{1} from the broadcast. As result of the Read-Through, there may be overflow from the storage levels. These are handled in the Overflow-Handling (OH) subcycle.

It is necessary to consider overflow handling because it is desirable to have information overflowed from a storage level to be in the immediate lower storage level, which can then be viewed as an extension to the higher storage level.

One strategy of handling overflow to meet this objective is to treat overflows from M^{i} as references to M^{i+1}. We refer to algorithms that incorporate this strategy as having dynamic-overflow-placement (DOP).

Another possible overflow handling strategy is to treat an overflow from M^{i} as a reference to M^{i+1} only when the overflow information is not already in M^{i+1}. If the overflow information is already in M^{i+1}, no overflow handling is necessary. We refer to algorithms that incorporate this strategy as having static-overflow-placement (SOP).

Let us consider the algorithms at each storage level for selecting the page to be overflowed. Since the Least Recently Used (LRU) algorithm (Denning, 1974; Mattson et. al, 1970) serves as the basis for most current algorithms, we shall consider natural extensions to LRU for managing

the storage levels in the data storage hierarchy system.

Consider the following two strategies for handling the Read-Through Cycle. First, let every storage level above and including the level containing the addressed information be updated according to the LRU strategy. Thus, all storage levels lower than the addressed information do not know about the reference. This class of algorithms is called LOCAL-LRU algorithm. This is illustrated in Figure 4.3.

The other class of algorithms that we shall consider is called GLOBAL-LRU algorithm. In this case, all storage levels are updated according to the LRU strategy whether or not that level actually participates in the read-through. This is illustrated in Figure 4.4.

Although the read-through operation leaves supersets of the page p_{ya}^1 in all levels, the future handling of each of these pages depends upon the replacement algorithms used and the effects of the overflow handling. We would like to guarantee that the contents of each storage level, M^i, is always a superset of its immediately higher level, M^{i-1}. This property is called Multi-Level Inclusion (MLI). Conditions to guarantee MLI will be derived in a later section.

It is not difficult to demonstrate situations where

-101-

Figure 4.3 Local-LRU Algorithm

Figure 4.4   Global-LRU Algorithm

handling overflows generates references which produce overflows, which generate yet more references. Hence another important question to resolve is to determine the conditions under which an overflow from M^i is always found to already exist in M^{i+1}, i.e., no reference to storage levels lower than M^{i+1} is generated as a result of the overflow. This property is called Multi-Level Overflow Inclusion (MLOI). Conditions to guarantee MLOI will be derived in a later section.

We shall consider these important properties in light of four basic algorithm alternatives based on local or global LRU and static or dynamic overflow. Formal definitions for these algorithms will be provided after the basic model of the data storage hierarchy system is introduced.

4.3.2 Basic Model of a Data Storage Hierarchy

For the purposes of this thesis, the basic model illustrated in Figure 4.5 is sufficient to model a data storage hierarchy. As far as the Read-Through and Overflow-Handling operations are concerned, this basic model is generalizable to a h-level storage hierarchy system.

M^r can be viewed as a reservoir which contains all the information. M^i is the top level. It has m_i pages each of size Q_i. M^j (j=i+1) is the next level. It has m_j pages each of size nQ_i where n is an integer greater than 1.

References

M^i m_i pages of size Q_i each

Common
data
path

M^j m_j pages of size nQ_i each

Mr Reservoir

Figure 4.5 Basic Model of a Data Storage Hierarchy

4.3.3 Formal Definitions of Storage Management Algorithms

Denote a reference string by $r = "r_1, r_2, \ldots, r_n"$, where r_t ($1 \leq t \leq n$) is the page being referenced at the t-th reference cycle. Let S_t^i be the <u>stack</u> for M^i at the beginning of the t-th reference cycle, ordered according to LRU. That is, $S_t^i = (S_t^i(1), S_t^i(2), \ldots, S_t^i(K))$, where $S_t^i(1)$ is the most recently referenced page and $S_t^i(K)$ is the least recently referenced page. Note that $K \leq m_i$ (m_i = capacity of M^i in terms of the number of pages). The number of pages in S_t^i is denoted as $|S_t^i|$, hence $|S_t^i| = K$. By convention, $S_1^i = \emptyset$, $|S_1^i| = 0$.

S_t^i is an ordered set. Define M_t^i as the contents of S_t^i without any ordering. Similarly, we can define S_t^j and M_t^j for M^j.

Let us denote the pages in M^j by P_1^j, P_2^j, $\ldots$. Each page, P_y^j, in M^j, consists of an equivalent of n smaller pages, each of size $Q_i = Q_j/n$. Denote this set of pages by $(P_y^j)^i$, i.e., $(P_y^j)^i = \left\{ P_{y1}^i, P_{y2}^i, \ldots, P_{yn}^i \right\}$. In general, $(M_t^j)^i$ is the set of pages, each of size Q_i, obtained by "breaking down" the pages in M_t^j. Formally, $(M_t^j)^i = $

$$\bigcup_{k=1}^{x} (S_t^j(k))^i \text{ where } x = |S_t^j| .$$ $(P_y^j)^i$ is called the <u>family</u> from the <u>parent page</u> P_y^j. Any pair of pages, P_{ya}^i and P_{yb}^i from $(P_y^j)^i$ are said to be family equivalent, denoted by $P_{ya}^i \stackrel{f}{=} P_{yb}^i$. Furthermore, a parent page P_y^j and

a page P_{yz}^i (for $1 \leq z \leq n$) from its family are said to be corresponding pages, denoted by $P_{yz}^i \overset{c}{=} P_y^j$.

S_t^i and S_t^j are said to be in corresponding order, denoted by $S_t^i \overset{0}{=} S_t^j$, if $S_t^i(k) \overset{c}{=} S_t^j(k)$ for $k = 1, 2, 3, \ldots w$, where $w = \min(|S_t^i|, |S_t^j|)$. Intuitively, two stacks are in corresponding order if, for each element of the shorter stack, there is a corresponding page in the other stack at the same stack distance (the stack distance for page $S_t^i(k)$ is defined to be k).

M_t^i and M_t^j are said to be correspondingly equivalent, denoted by $M_t^i \overset{e}{=} M_t^j$ if $|M_t^i| = |M_t^j|$ and for any $k = 1, 2, \ldots, |M_t^i|$ there exists x, such that $S_t^i(k) \overset{c}{=} S_t^j(x)$ and $S_t^j(x) \overset{c}{\neq} S_t^i(y)$ for all $y \neq k$. Intuitively, the two memories are correspondingly equivalent when each page in one memory corresponds to exactly one page in the other memory.

The reduced stack, $\bar{S}_t^i$, of S_t^i is defined to be $\bar{S}_t^i(k) = S_t^i(j_k)$ for $k = 1, \ldots, |\bar{S}_t^i|$ where j_k is the minimum j_k where $j_k > j_{k-1}(j_0 = 0)$ and $\bar{S}_t^i(k) \overset{f}{\neq} S_t^i(j)$ for $j < j_k$. Intuitively, $\bar{S}_t^i$ is obtained from S_t^i by collecting one page from each family existing in S_t^i, such that the page being collected from each family is the page that has the smallest stack distance within the family.

In the following, we define the storage management algorithms. In each case, assume that the page referenced

at time t is P_{ya}^i.

$\underline{LRU}$ $(S_t^i, P_{ya}^i) = S_{t+1}^i$ is defined as follows:

Case 1: $P_{ya}^i \in S_t^i$, $P_{ya}^i = S_t^i(k)$:

$$S_{t+1}^i(1) = P_{ya}^i, \quad S_{t+1}^i(x) = \begin{cases} S_t^i(x-1), & 1 < x \le k \\ S_t^i(x), & k < x \le |S_t^i| \end{cases}$$

Case 2: $P_{ya}^i \notin S_t^i$:

$$S_{t+1}^i(1) = P_{ya}^i, \quad S_{t+1}^i(x) = S_t^i(x-1),$$
$$1 < x \le \min(m_i, |S_t^i| + 1)$$

If $|S_t^i| = m_i$ then $P_{oa}^i = S_t^i(m_i)$ is the over-flow, else there is no overflow.

$\underline{LOCAL\text{-}LRU\text{-}SOP}$ $(S_t^i, S_t^j, P_{ya}^i) = (S_{t+1}^i, S_{t+1}^j)$ is defined

as follows:

Case 1: $P_{ya}^i \in S_t^i$:

$$S_{t+1}^i = \underline{LRU}\ (S_t^i, P_{ya}^i), \quad S_{t+1}^j = S_t^j$$

Case 2: $P_{ya}^i \notin S_t^i$, $P_y^j \in S_t^j$:

$$S_{t'}^i = \underline{LRU}\ (S_t^i, P_{ya}^i), \quad S_{t'}^j = \underline{LRU}\ (S_t^j, P_y^j),$$

If there is no overflow from S_t^i

then $S_{t+1}^i = S_{t'}^i$ and $S_{t+1}^j = S_{t'}^j$

If overflow from S_t^i is the page P_{oa}^i

then $(S_{t+1}^i, S_{t+1}^j) = \underline{SOP}\ (S_{t'}^i, S_{t'}^j, P_{oa}^i)$

defined as:

$S_{t+1}^i = S_{t'}^i$; if $P_o^j \in S_{t'}^j$ then $S_{t+1}^j = S_{t'}^j$,

if $P_o^j \notin S_{t'}^j$ then $S_{t+1}^j = \underline{LRU}\ (S_{t'}^j, P_o^j)$

Case 3: $P_{ya}^i \not\in S_t^i$ and $P_y^j \not\in S_t^j$:

(handled as in Case 2)

<u>LOCAL-LRU-DOP</u> $(S_t^i, S_t^j, P_{ya}^i) = (S_{t+1}^i, S_{t+1}^j)$ is defined as

Case 1: $P_{ya}^i \in S_t^i$:

$$S_{t+1}^i = \underline{LRU} \ (S_t^i, P_{ya}^i), \quad S_{t+1}^j = S_t^j$$

Case 2: $P_{ya}^i \not\in S_t^i$ and $P_y^j \in S_t^j$:

$$S_{t'}^i = \underline{LRU} \ (S_t^i, P_{ya}^i), \quad S_{t'}^j = \underline{LRU} \ (S_t^j, P_y^j)$$

If no overflow from S_t^i then $S_{t+1}^i = S_{t'}^i$

and $S_{t+1}^j = S_{t'}^j$

If overflow from S_t^i is P_{oa}^i then

$(S_{t+1}^i, S_{t+1}^j) = \underline{DOP} \ (S_{t'}^i, S_{t'}^j, P_{oa}^i)$ which is

defined as:

$$S_{t+1}^i = S_{t'}^i \quad \text{and} \quad S_{t+1}^j = \underline{LRU} \ (S_{t'}^j, P_o^j)$$

Case 3: $P_{ya}^i \not\in S_t^i$ and $P_y^j \not\in S_t^j$:

(handled as in Case 2 above)

<u>GLOBAL-LRU-SOP</u> $(S_t^i, S_t^j, P_{ya}^i) = (S_{t+1}^i, S_{t+1}^j)$ is defined as

follows:

$S_{t'}^i = \underline{LRU} \ (S_t^i, P_{ya}^i)$ and $S_{t'}^j = \underline{LRU} \ (S_t^j, P_y^j)$,

If no overflow from S_t^i then $S_{t+1}^i = S_{t'}^i$ and

$S_{t+1}^j = S_{t'}^j$

If overflow from S_t^i is P_{oa}^i then (S_{t+1}^i, S_{t+1}^j)

$= \underline{SOP} \ (S_{t'}^i, S_{t'}^j, P_{oa}^i)$

$\underline{\text{GLOBAL-LRU-DOP}}$ $(S^i_t, S^j_t, P^i_{ya}) = (S^i_{t+1}, S^j_{t+1})$ is defined as

$$S^i_{t'} = \underline{\text{LRU}} \ (S^i_t, P^i_{ya}) \text{ and } S^j_{t'} = \underline{\text{LRU}} \ (S^j_t, P^j_y)$$

If no overflow from S^i_t then $S^i_{t+1} = S^i_{t'}$ and $S^j_{t+1} = S^j_{t'}$

If overflow from S^i_t is P^i_{oa} then $(S^i_{t+1}, S^j_{t+1}) =$
$$\underline{\text{DOP}} \ (S^i_{t'}, S^j_{t'}, P^i_{oa})$$

4.4   PROPERTIES OF DATA STORAGE HIERARCHY SYSTEMS

One of the properties of a Read-Through operation is
that it leaves a "shadow" of the referenced page (i.e.,
the corresponding pages) in all storage levels. This pro-
vides multiple redundancy for the page. Does this multiple
redundancy exist at all times? That is, if a page exists
in storage level M^i, will its corresponding pages always
be in <u>all</u> storage levels lower than M^i? We refer to this
as the <u>Multi-Level Inclusion</u> (MLI) property. As illus-
trated in Figure 4.6 for the LOCAL-LRU algorithms and in
Figure 4.7 for the GLOBAL-LRU algorithms, it is not
always possible to guarantee that the MLI property holds.
For example, after the reference to P_{31}^i in Figure 4.6(a)
the page P_{11}^i exists in M^i but its corresponding page P_1^j
is not found in M^j. In this chapter we shall derive the
necessary and sufficient conditions for the MLI property
to hold at all times.

Another desirable property of the data storage hierarchy
is to avoid generating references due to overflows. That
is, under what conditions will overflow pages from M^i
find their corresponding pages already existing in the
storage level M^{i+1}? We refer to this as the <u>Multi-Level</u>
<u>Overflow Inclusion (MLOI)</u> property. We shall investigate
the conditions that make this property true at all times.

(a) LOCAL - LRU - SOP

	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
reference to M^i	P^i_{11}	P^i_{21}	P^i_{11}	P^i_{31}		P^i_{11}	P^i_{41}	
contents of M^i ($m_i=2$)	P^i_{11}	P^i_{21} / P^i_{11}	P^i_{11} / P^i_{21}	(P^i_{31} / P^i_{11})		(P^i_{11} / P^i_{31})	(P^i_{41} / P^i_{11})	
overflow from M^i					P^i_{21}			P^i_{31}
reference to M^j	P^j_1	P^j_2	ϕ	P^j_3	ϕ	ϕ	P^j_4	ϕ
contents of M^j ($m_j=2$)	P^j_1	P^j_2 / P^j_1	P^j_2 / P^j_1	P^j_3 / P^j_2	(P^j_3 / P^j_2)	(P^j_3 / P^j_2)	P^j_4 / P^j_3	(P^j_4 / P^j_3)
reference to M^r	$*$	$*$	ϕ	$*$	ϕ	ϕ	$*$	ϕ

(a) LOCAL – LRU – SOP

(b) LOCAL - LRU - DOP

	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
reference to M^i	P^i_{11}	P^i_{21}	P^i_{11}	P^i_{31}		P^i_{11}	P^i_{41}	
contents of M^i ($m_i=2$)	P^i_{11}	P^i_{21} / P^i_{11}	P^i_{11} / P^i_{21}	(P^i_{31} / P^i_{11})		(P^i_{11} / P^i_{31})	(P^i_{41} / P^i_{11})	
overflow from M^i					P^i_{21}			P^i_{31}
reference to M^j	P^j_1	P^j_2	ϕ	P^j_3	P^j_2	ϕ	P^j_4	P^j_3
contents of M^j ($m_j=2$)	P^j_1	P^j_2 / P^j_1	P^j_2 / P^j_1	P^j_3 / P^j_2	(P^j_2 / P^j_3)	(P^j_2 / P^j_3)	P^j_4 / P^j_2	(P^j_3 / P^j_4)
reference to M^r	$*$	$*$	ϕ	$*$	ϕ	ϕ	$*$	$*$

(b) LOCAL- LRU-DOP

Figure 4.6   Violation of MLI by Local-LRU Algorithms

-113-

(a) GLOBAL-LRU-SOP

reference to M^i	P^i_{11}	P^i_{21}	P^i_{31}		P^i_{41}		P^i_{51}	
contents of M^i ($m_i=2$)	P^i_{11}	P^i_{21}	P^i_{31} P^i_{11}	P^i_{21}	P^i_{41} P^i_{31}		P^i_{51} P^i_{41}	
overflow from M^i					P^i_{11}		P^i_{21}	P^i_{31}
reference to M^j	P^j_1	P^j_2	P^j_3 P^j_1		P^j_4 P^j_2		P^j_5 P^j_3	
contents of M^j ($m_j=2$)	P^j_1	P^j_2 P^j_1	P^j_3 P^j_2	P^j_1 P^j_3	P^j_4 P^j_1	P^j_2 P^j_4	P^j_5 P^j_2	P^j_3 P^j_5
reference to M^r	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*

(b) GLOBAL-LRU-DOP

reference to M^i	P^i_{11}	P^i_{21}	P^i_{31}		P^i_{41}		P^i_{51}	
contents of M^i ($m_i=2$)	P^i_{11}	P^i_{21}	P^i_{31} P^i_{11}	P^i_{21}	P^i_{41} P^i_{31}		P^i_{51} P^i_{41}	
overflow from M^i					P^i_{11}		P^i_{21}	P^i_{31}
reference to M^j	P^j_1	P^j_2	P^j_3 P^j_1		P^j_4 P^j_2		P^j_5 P^j_3	
contents of M^j ($m_j=2$)	P^j_1	P^j_2 P^j_1	P^j_3 P^j_2	P^j_1 P^j_3	P^j_4 P^j_1	P^j_2 P^j_4	P^j_5 P^j_2	P^j_3 P^j_5
reference to M^r	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*

Figure 4.7   Violation of MLI by Global-LRU Algorithms

-114-

Referring to the basic model of a data storage hierarchy in Figure 4.5, for high performance it is desirable to minimize the number of references to M^r (the reservoir). If we increased the number of pages in M^i, or in M^j, or in both, we might expect the number of references to M^r to decrease. As illustrated in Figure 4.8 for the LOCAL-LRU-SOP algorithm, this is not always so, i.e., for the same reference string, the number of references to the reservoir actually increased from 4 to 5 after M^i is increased by 1 page in size. We refer to this phenomena as a Multi-Level Paging Anomaly (MLPA). One can easily find situations where MLPA occurs for the other three algorithms. Since occurrence of MLPA reduces performance in spite of the costs of increasing memory sizes, we would like to investigate the conditions to guarantee that MLPA does not exist.

reference to M^i | P_{11}^i | P_{21}^i | P_{11}^i | P_{31}^i | | P_{11}^i | P_{41}^i

contents of M^i ($m_i = 2$):

P_{11}^i	P_{21}^i	P_{11}^i	P_{31}^i		P_{11}^i	P_{41}^i
	P_{11}^i	P_{21}^i	P_{11}^i		P_{31}^i	P_{11}^i

overflow from M^i: P_{21}^i ... P_{31}^i

reference to M^j | P_1^j | P_2^j | ϕ | P_3^j | ϕ | ϕ | P_4^j | ϕ

contents of M^j ($m_j = 2$):

P_1^j	P_2^j	P_2^j	P_3^j	P_3^j	P_3^j	P_4^j	P_4^j
	P_1^j	P_1^j	P_2^j	P_2^j	P_2^j	P_3^j	P_3^j

reference to M^r | $*$ | $*$ | ϕ | $*$ | ϕ | ϕ | $*$ | ϕ

number of references to M^r = 4

---

reference to M^i | P_{11}^i | P_{21}^i | P_{11}^i | P_{31}^i | P_{11}^i | P_{41}^i

contents of M^i ($m_i = 3$):

P_{11}^i	P_{21}^i	P_{11}^i	P_{31}^i	P_{11}^i	P_{41}^i
	P_{11}^i	P_{21}^i	P_{11}^i	P_{31}^i	P_{11}^i
			P_{21}^i	P_{21}^i	P_{31}^i

overflow from M^i: P_{21}^i

reference to M^j | P_1^j | P_2^j | ϕ | P_3^j | ϕ | P_4^j | P_2^j

contents of M^j ($m_j = 2$):

P_1^j	P_2^j	P_2^j	P_3^j	P_3^j	P_4^j	P_2^j
	P_1^j	P_1^j	P_2^j	P_2^j	P_3^j	P_4^j

reference to M^r | $*$ | $*$ | ϕ | $*$ | ϕ | $*$ | $*$

number of references to M^r = 5

Figure 4.8   Illustration of MLPA

-116-

4.4.1 Summary of Properties

The MLI, MLOI, and MLPA properties of the data storage hierarchy have been derived in the form of eight theorems. These theorems are briefly explained and summarized below and formally proven in the following section.

Multi-Level Inclusion (MLI) : It is shown in Theorem 1 that if the number of pages in M^i is greater than the number of pages in M^j (note M^j pages are larger than those of M^i), then it is not possible to guarantee MLI for all reference strings at all times. It turns out that using LOCAL-LRU-SOP, or LOCAL-LRU-DOP, no matter how many pages are in M^j or M^i, one can always find a reference string that violates the MLI property (Theorem 2). Using the GLOBAL-LRU algorithms, however, conditions to guarantee MLI exist. For the GLOBAL-LRU-SOP algorithm, a necessary and sufficient condition to guarantee that MLI holds at all times for any reference string is that the number of pages in M^j be greater than the number of pages in M^i (Theorem 3). For the GLOBAL-LRU-DOP algorithm, a necessary and sufficient condition to guarantee MLI is that the number of pages in M^j be greater than or equal to twice the number of pages in M^i (Theorem 4).

Multi-Level Overflow Inclusion (MLOI) : It is obvious that if MLI cannot be guaranteed then MLOI cannot be

guaranteed. Thus, the LOCAL-LRU algorithms cannot guarantee MLOI. For the GLOBAL-LRU-SOP algorithm, a necessary and sufficient condition to guarantee MLOI is the same condition as that to guarantee MLI (Theorem 5). For the GLOBAL-LRU-DOP algorithm, a necessary and sufficient condition to guarantee MLOI is that the number of pages in M^j is strictly greater than twice the number of pages in M^i (Theorem 6). Thus, for the GLOBAL-LRU-DOP algorithm, guaranteeing that MLOI holds will also guarantee that MLI will hold, but not vice versa.

Multi-Level Paging Anomaly (MLPA) : We have identified and proved sufficiency conditions to avoid MLPA for the GLOBAL-LRU algorithms. For the GLOBAL-LRU-SOP algorithm, this condition is that the number of pages in M^j must be greater than the number of pages in M^i before and after any increase in the sizes of the levels (Theorem 7). For the GLOBAL-LRU-DOP algorithm, this condition is that the number of pages in M^j must be greater than twice the number of pages in M^i before and after any increase in the sizes of the levels (Theorem 8).

In summary, we have shown that for the LOCAL-LRU algorithms, no choice of sizes for the storage levels can guarantee that a lower storage level always contains all the information in the higher storage levels. For the

-118-

GLOBAL-LRU algorithms, by choosing appropriate sizes for the storage levels, we can (1) ensure that the above inclusion property holds at all times for all reference strings, (2) guarantee that no extra page references to lower storage levels are generated as a result of handling overflows, and (3) guarantee that increasing the sizes of the storage levels does not increase the number of references to lower storage levels. These results are formally stated as the following eight Theorems. Formal proofs of these Theorems are presented in the following section.

THEOREM 1

Under LOCAL-LRU-SOP, or LOCAL-LRU-DOP, or GLOBAL-LRU-SOP, or GLOBAL-LRU-DOP, for any $m_i \geq 2$, $m_j \leq m_i$ implies $\exists\ r,t,\ (M_t^j)^i \not\supseteq M_t^i$

THEOREM 2

Under LOCAL-LRU-SOP, or LOCAL-LRU-DOP, for any $m_i \geq 2$, and any m_j, $\exists\ r,t,\ (M_t^j)^i \not\supseteq M_t^i$

THEOREM 3

Under GLOBAL-LRU-SOP, for any $m_i \geq 2$, $\forall\ r,t,\ (M_t^j)^i \supseteq M_t^i$ iff $m_j > m_i$

THEOREM 4

Under GLOBAL-LRU-DOP, for any $m_i \geq 2$, $\forall r,t,\ (M_t^j)^i \supseteq M_t^i$ iff $m_j \geq 2m_i$

THEOREM 5

Under GLOBAL-LRU-SOP, for any $m_i \geq 2$, $\forall r,t$, an overflow from M^i finds its corresponding page in M^j iff $m_j > m_i$

THEOREM 6

Under GLOBAL-LRU-DOP, for any $m_i \geq 2$, $\forall r,t$, an overflow from M^i finds its corresponding page in M^j iff $m_j > 2m_i$

THEOREM 7

Let M^i (with m_i pages), M^j (with m_j pages) and M^r be System A.

Let M'^i (with m_i' pages), M'^j (with m_j' pages) and M^r be System B.

Let $m_i' \geq m_i$ and $m_j' \geq m_j$. Under GLOBAL-LRU-SOP, for any $m_i \geq 2$, no MLPA can exist if

$$m_j > m_i \text{ and } m_j' > m_i'$$

THEOREM 8

Let System A and System B be defined as in Theorem 7.

Let $m_i' \geq m_i$ and $m_j' \geq m_j$. Under GLOBAL-LRU-DOP, for any $m_i \geq 2$, no MLPA can exist if $m_j > 2m_i$ and $m_j' > 2m_i'$

4.4.2 Derivation of Properties

THEOREM 1

Under LOCAL-LRU-SOP, or LOCAL-LRU-DOP, or GLOBAL-LRU-SOP, or GLOBAL-LRU-DOP, for any $m_i \geq 2$, $m_j \leq m_i$ implies $\exists r,t$, $(M_t^j)^i \not\supseteq M_t^i$

PROOF

Case 1 : $m_j < m_i$

Consider the reference string $r = " P_{1a}^i, P_{2a}^i, \ldots, P_{(m_j+1)a}^i "$.

Using any one of the algorithms, the following stacks are obtained at $t = m_j + 2$:

$$S_t^i = (P_{(m_j+1)a}^i, P_{m_j a}^i, \ldots, P_{2a}^i, P_{1a}^i)$$

$$S_t^j = (P_{(m_j+1)}^j, P_{m_j}^j, \ldots, P_3^j, P_2^j)$$

Thus, $P_{1a}^i \in M_t^i$ but $P_{1a}^i \notin (M_t^j)^i$, i.e., $(M_t^j)^i \not\supseteq M_t^i$.

Case 2 : $m_j = m_i = w$

Consider the reference string $r = " P_{1a}^i, P_{2a}^i, \ldots, P_{(w+1)a}^i "$

Using any one of the above algorithms, the following stacks are obtained at $t = w + 2$:

$$S_t^i = (P_{(w+1)a}^i, P_{wa}^i, \ldots, P_{3a}^i, P_{2a}^i)$$

$$S_t^j = (P_1^j, P_{(w+1)}^j, P_w^j, \ldots P_4^j, P_3^j)$$

Thus, $P_{2a}^i \in M_t^i$ but $P_{2a}^i \notin (M_t^j)^i$, i.e., $(M_t^j)^i \not\supseteq M_t^i$.

Q.E.D.

-122-

THEOREM 2

Under LOCAL-LRU-SOP, or LOCAL-LRU-DOP, for any

$m_i \geq 2$, and any m_j, $\exists r, t$, $(M_t^j)^i \not\equiv M_t^i$.

PROOF (For LOCAL-LRU-SOP)

For $m_j \leq m_i$ the result follows directly from THEOREM 1.

For $m_j > m_i$, using the reference string

$$r = "\ P_{za}^i,\ P_{1a}^i,\ P_{za}^i,\ P_{2a}^i,\ \ldots,\ P_{za}^i,\ P_{m_j a}^i ",$$

the following stacks will be produced at $t = 2m_j + 1$:

$$S_t^i = (P_{m_j a}^i,\ P_{za}^i,\ P_{(m_j-1)a}^i,\ \ldots,\ P_{(m_j-m_i+2)a}^i)$$

$$S_t^j = (P_{m_j}^j,\ P_{m_j-1}^j,\ \ldots,\ P_2^j,\ P_1^j)$$

Thus, $P_{za}^i \in M_t^i$ but $P_{za}^i \notin (M_t^j)^i$, i.e., $(M_t^j)^i \not\equiv M_t^i$.

Q.E.D.

PROOF (For LOCAL-LRU-DOP)

For $m_j \leq m_i$ the result follows directly from THEOREM 1.

For $m_j > m_i$, using the following reference string

$$r = "\ P_{za}^i,\ P_{1a}^i,\ P_{za}^i,\ P_{2a}^i,\ \ldots,\ P_{za}^i,\ P_{m_j a}^i ",$$

The following stacks will be produced at $t = 2m_j + 1$:

$$S_t^i = (P_{m_j a}^i,\ P_{za}^i,\ \ldots,\ P_{(m_j-m_i+2)a}^i),$$

$$S_t^j = (a_1,\ a_2,\ \ldots,\ a_{m_j})$$

Where for $1 \leq i \leq m_j$, $a_i \in \left\{ P_{m_j}^j,\ P_{m_j-1}^j,\ \ldots,\ P_3^j,\ P_2^j,\ P_1^j \right\}$

since P_z^j is the only overflow from M^j.

Thus, $P_{za}^i \in M_t^i$ but $P_{za}^i \notin (M_t^j)^i$, i.e., $(M_t^j)^i \not\equiv M_t^i$.

Q.E.D.

THEOREM 3

Under GLOBAL-LRU-SOP, for any $m_i \geq 2$, $\forall\ r,t$, $(M_t^j)^i \supseteq M_t^i$ iff $m_j > m_i$

PROOF

This proof has two parts. Part (a) to prove $\forall\ r,t$,

$$(M_t^j)^i \supseteq M_t^i \Rightarrow m_j > m_i$$

or equivalently, $m_j \leq m_i \Rightarrow \exists\ r,t,\ (M_t^j)^i \not\supseteq M_t^i$

Part (b) to prove $m_j > m_i \Rightarrow \forall r,t,\ (M_t^j)^i \supseteq M_t^i$

PROOF of Part (a): $m_j \leq m_i \Rightarrow \exists\ r,t,\ (M_t^j)^i \not\supseteq M_t^i$

This follows directly from THEOREM 1.

$$Q.E.D.$$

To Prove Part (b), we need the following results.

LEMMA 3.1

$\forall\ r,t$ such that $|M_t^j| \leq m_i$, if $m_j = m_i + 1$, then

(a) $(M_t^j)^i \supseteq M_t^i$, and (b) $\bar{s}_t^i \overset{0}{=} s_t^j$

PROOF of LEMMA 3.1

For t=2 (i.e., after the first reference), (a) and (b) are true. Suppose (a) and (b) are true for t, such that $|M_t^j| \leq m_i$

Consider the next reference:

Case 1: It is a reference to M^i:

There is no overflow from M^i or M^j, so (a) is still true. Since Global-LRU is used, (b) is still true.

-124-

Case 2:   It is a reference to M^j:

There is no overflow from M^j. If no overflow from M^i, the same arguement as Case 1 applies. If there is overflow from M^i, the overflow page finds its corresponding page in M^j. Since SOP is used, this overflow can be treated as a "no-op". Thus (a) and (b) are preserved.

Case 3:   It is a reference to M^r:

There is no overflow from M^j since $|M_{t+1}^j| \leq m_i$. Thus the same reasoning as in Case 2 applies.

$$Q.E.D.$$

LEMMA 3.2

$\forall$ r,t, such that $|M_t^j| = m_j$, if $m_j = m_i + 1$ then

(a) $(M_t^j)^i \supset M_t^i$, (b) $\overline{S}_t^i \cong S_t^j$, and (c) $(S_t^j(m_j))^i \cap S_t^i = \emptyset$

Let us denote the conditions (a) (b) and (c) jointly as $Z(t)$.

PROOF of LEMMA 3.2

Suppose the first time $S_t^j(m_j)$ is filled is by the t^*-th reference. That is, $S_t^j(m_j) = \emptyset$ for all $t \leq t^*$ and $S_t^j(m_j) \neq \emptyset$ for all $t > t^*$. From LEMMA 3.1 we know that (a) and (b) are true for all $t \leq t^*$.

Let $t_1 = t^* + 1$, $t_2 = t^* + 2$, ..., etc. We shall show, by induction on t, starting at t_1, that A(t) is true.

First we show that $Z(t_1)$ is true as follows:

Case 1: $M_{t*}^j \subseteq M_{t*}^i$

$\bar{S}_{t*}^i \subseteq S_{t*}^j$ and $M_{t*}^j \subseteq M_{t*}^i \Rightarrow S_{t*}^j(m_j-1) \subseteq S_{t*}^i(m_i)$

As a result of the reference at $t*$ (to M^r),

$S_{t*+1}^j(m_j) = S_{t*}^j(m_j-1)$ and $S_{t*}^i(m_i)$ overflows from M^i.

This overflow page finds its corresponding apge in M_j

because there is no overflow from M^j and (a). Since

SOP is used, the overflow from M^i can be treated as

a "no-op". Furthermore, since Global-LRU is used,

(b) is true after the $t*$-th reference, (b) and

$|S_{t*+1}^j| > |S_{t*+1}^i| \Rightarrow$ (a) and (c). Thus $Z(t_1)$ is true.

Case 2: $(M_{t*}^j)^i \supset M_{t*}^i$ and M_{t*}^j and $\not\subseteq M_{t*}^i$

$(M_{t*}^j)^i \supset M_{t*}^i$ and $M_{t*}^j \not\subseteq M_{t*}^i \Rightarrow \exists S_{t*}^j(k)$ such that

$(S_{t*}^j(k))^i \cap M_{t*}^i = \emptyset$ $\bar{S}_{t*}^i \subseteq S_{t*}^j$ and $(S_{t*}^j(k))^i \cap M_{t*}^i = \emptyset$

$k > |\bar{S}_{t*}^i|$ and $(S_{t*}^j(x))^i M_{t*}^i = \emptyset$ for all x where

$m_{j-1} \geq x \geq k$. Thus $(S_{t*}^j(m_{j-1}))^i \cap S_{t*}^i = \emptyset$ (i.e., the last

page of S_{t*}^j is not S_{t*}^i)

$S_{t*}^i(m_i)$ overflows from M^i. There is no overflow from

M^j. Thus the overflow page from M^i finds its corres-

ponding page in M^j. For the same reasons as in Case

1, (b) is still preserved. (b) and $|S_{t*+1}^j| > |S_{t*+1}^i| \Rightarrow$

(a) and (c) are true. Thus, $Z(t_1)$ is true.

Assume that $Z(t_k)$ is true; to show that $Z(t_{k+1})$ is true,

we consider the next reference, at time t_{k+1}:

-126-

Imagine that the last page of $S^j_{t_k}$ does not exist,

i.e., $S^j_{t_k}(m_j) = \emptyset$. If the reference at t_{k+1} is to

a page in $M^i_{t_k}$ or $M^j_{t_k}$, then (a) and (b) still hold

because Global-LRU is used and because overflow from

M^i finds its corresponding page in M^j (See the proof

of LEMMA 3.1).

If the reference at t_{k+1} is to a page not in $M^j_{t_k}$, then

we can apply the agruement as that used in considering

the reference at time t_1 above to show that $Z(t_{k+1})$ is

still true.

$$Q.E.D.$$

LEMMA 3.3

$\forall\ r, t$, if $m_j = m_i + 1$ then (a) $(M^j_t)^i \supseteq M^i_t$ and (b) $(S^j_t(m_m))^i \cap S^i_t = \emptyset$

PROOF of LEMMA 3.3

For t such that $|M^j_t| \leq m_i$ (a) follows directly from

LEMMA 3.1 and (b) is true because $S^j_t(m_j) = \emptyset$

For t such that $|M^j_t| = m_j$ (a) and (b) follows directly

from LEMMA 3.2

$$Q.E.D.$$

LEMMA 3.4

$\forall\ r, t$, if $m_j > m_i$ than (a) $(M^j_t)^i \supseteq M^i_t$ and (b)

$(S^j_t(m_j))^i \cap S^i_t = \emptyset$

PROOF of LEMMA 3.4

Let $m_j = m_i + k$. We shall prove this lemma by induction of k. For $k=1$ (a) and (b) are true from LEMMA 3.3.

Suppose that (a) and (b) are true for k. Consider $m_j = m_i + (k+1)$. That is consider the effects of increasing M^j by 1 page in size:

Since M^i is unchanged, M^j (with $m_i + k + 1$ pages) sees the same reference string as M^j (with $m_i + k$ pages).

Applying the stack inclusion property (Mattson et al., 1970), we have M^j (with $m_i + k + 1$ pages) $\supseteq M^j$ (with $m_i + k$ pages). Thus (a) is still true. Suppose $(S_t^j(m_i+k+1))^i \cap S_t^i \neq \emptyset$ then there is a page in M^i that corresponds to this page. But $S_t^j(m_i+k+1)$ is not in M^j (with $m_i + k$ pages). This contradicts the property that $(M_t^j)^i \supseteq M_t^i$. This showes that (b) is still true.

<div align="center">Q.E.D.</div>

PROOF of Part (b): $m_j > m_i \Rightarrow \forall\ r, t,\ (M_t^j)^i \supseteq M_t^i$:

This follows directly from LEMMA 3.4.

<div align="center">Q.E.D.</div>

THEOREM 4

Under GLOBAL-LRU-DOP, for any $m_i \geq 2$, $\forall$ r,t, $(M_t^j)^i \supseteq M_t^i$ iff $m_j \geq 2m_i$

PROOF

This proof has two parts:

Part (a): $m_j < 2m_i \Rightarrow \exists$ r,t, $(M_t^j)^i \not\supseteq M_t^i$

Part (b): $m_j \geq 2m_i \Rightarrow \forall$ r,t, $(M_t^j)^i \supseteq M_t^i$

PROOF of Part (a): $m_j < 2m_i \Rightarrow \exists$ r,t, $(M_t^j)^i \not\supseteq M_t^i$

For $m_j \leq m_i$ the result follows from THEOREM 1.

Consider the case for $2m_i > m_j > m_i$:

The reference string $r = $ "P_{1a}^i , P_{2a}^i, P_{3a}^i, $\ldots$, $P_{(2m_i)a}^i$"

will produce the following stacks:

$S_t^i = (P_{(2m_i)a}^i, P_{(2m_i-1)a}^i, \ldots, P_{(m_i+1)a}^i)$,

$S_t^j = (a_1, a_2, a_3, \ldots, a_{m_j})$ where a_i's are picked from

L_1 and L_2 alternatively, starting from L_1.

$L_1 = (P_{m_i}^j, P_{(m_i-1)}^j, \ldots, P_1^j)$ and

$L_2 = (P_{2m_i}^j, P_{(2m_i-1)}^j, \ldots, P_{m_i+1}^j)$.

If m_j is even, then $(a_1, a_3, \ldots a_{m_j-1})$ corresponds to the frist $m_j/2$ elements of L_1 and $(a_2, a_4, \ldots a_{m_j})$ corresponds to the first $m_j/2$ elements in L_2. We see that $P_{(m_i+1)a}^i$ is in S_t^i but its corresponding page is not in S_t^j ($P_{(m_i+1)}^j$ is not in S_t^j since $m_j/2 < m_i$).

If m_j is odd, then $(a_1, a_3, \ldots a_{m_j})$ corresponds to the first $(m_j+1)/2$ elements in L_1 and $(a_2, 2_4, \ldots, a_{m_j-1})$

-129-

corresponds to the first $(m_j-1)/2$ elements in L_2. We see that the page $P^i_{(m_i+1)a}$ is in S^i_t but its corresponding page is not in S^j_t because $\max(\ (m_j-1)/2) = m_i-1$, thus, $a_{(m_j-1)}$ is at most the (m_i-1)-th element of L_2, $P^j_{2m_i-(m_i-1)+1}=P^j_{m_i+2}$. In both cases, $(M^j_t)^i \not\supseteq M^i_t$.

$$Q.E.D.$$

To prove Part (b), we need the following preliminary results.

LEMMA 4.1

Under GLOBAL-LRU-DOP, for $m_i \geq 2$, $m_j \geq 2m_i$, a page found at stack distance k in M^i_t implies its corresponding page can be found within stack distance 2k in M^j_t.

PROOF of LEMMA 4.1

We prove by induction on t.

At t=1, the statement is trivially true. At t=2 (i.e., after the first reference) $S^i_t(1)$ and its corresponding page are both at the beginning of the stack, hence the induction statement is still true. Suppose the induction statement is true at time t, i.e., $P^i_{za} = S^i_t(k) \Rightarrow P^j_z$ can be found within stack distance 2k within S^j_t.

Suppose the next reference is to P_{wa}^i. There are

three cases:

Case 1: $P_{wa}^i \; \varepsilon \; M_t^i \; (P_{wa}^i = S_t^i(x))$

From the induction statement, P_w^j is found within stack

distance 2k in S_t^j as illustrated in Fugure 4.9.

Consider the page movements in the two stacks as a result

of handling the reference to P_{wa}^i:

(1) P_{wa}^i and P_w^j are both moved to the top of their

      stack, the induction statement still holds for

      these pages.

(2)   Each page in A increases its stack distance by

      1, but its corresponding page is in A', each page

      of which can at most increase its stack distance

      by 1. Thus the induction statement holds for all

      pages in A.

(3)   None of the pages in B are moved. None of the pages

      in B' are moved. (See Figure 4.9) If a page

      in B has its corresponding page in B', the induction

      statement is not violated. Suppose a page in B,

      $P_{ba}^i = S_t^i(k)$ $(k>x)$, has its corresponding page,

      $P_b^j = S_t^j(w)$ in A'. Then P_b^j can at most increase

      its stack distance by 1. But $w \leq 2x$ because

      $P_b^j \; \varepsilon \; A'$. Since $2k > 2x$, the induction statement

      is not violated.

Figure 4.9

Case 2: $P_{wa}^i \not\in M_t^i$, $P_w^j \in M_t^j$

Each page in M^i increases its stack distance by 1.
Each corresponding page in M^j can at most increase
its stack distance by 2, one due to the reference and
one due to an overflow from M^i. Hence if
$P_{za}^j = S_t^i(k)$, $k < m_i$, then $P_{za}^i = S_{t+1}^i(k+1)$, and P_z^j can
be found within stack distance $2(k+1)$ in M^j at time
$t+1$.

Case 3: $P_{wa}^i \not\in M_t^i$, $P_w^j \not\in M_t^j$

As a result of the read-through from M^r, each page
in M^i is increased by a stack distance of 1. That is,
for $k < m_i$, $P_{za}^i = S_t^i(k) \Rightarrow P_{za}^i = S_{t+1}^i(k+1)$.
Each page in M^j can at most increase its stack distance
by 2, one due to loading the referenced page and one due
to an overflow from M^i. Hence, the page P_z^j is found
within stack distance of $2k+2$ in M^j. Since $\max(2k+2) =$
$2m_i \leq m_j$, P_z^j is still in M^j.

<div align="center">Q.E.D.</div>

COROLLARY to LEMMA 4.1

   $m_j > 2m_i \Rightarrow \forall r,t, (S_t^j(m_j))^i \cap S_t^i = \emptyset$

PROOF of COROLLARY

   For any P_{za}^i in S_t^i, its corresponding page can be
found within stack distance $2m_i$ in S_t^j, and since
pages in S_t^j are unique, the information in the last

<div align="center">-133-</div>

page of S_t^j is not found in S_t^i, i.e., $(S_t^j(m_j))^i \cap S_t^i = \emptyset$.

<u>PROOF of Part (b)</u>: $m_j \geq 2m_i \Rightarrow \forall\ r, t,\ (M_t^j)^i \supseteq M_t^i$

This follows directly from LEMMA 4.1.

Q.E.D.

THEOREM 5

Under GLOBAL-LRU-SOP, for any $m_i \geq 2$, $\forall$ r,t, an over-flow from M^i finds its corresponding page in M^j iff $m_j > m_i$

COROLLARY

Under GLOBAL-LRU-SOP, for any $m_i \geq 2$, $\forall$ r,t, an over-flow from M^i finds its corresponding page in M^j iff $\forall$ r,t, $(M_t^j)^i \supseteq M_t^i$.

PROOF

This Proof has two parts as shown below.

PROOF of Part (a): $m_j > m_i \Rightarrow \forall$ r,t, an overflow from M^i finds its corresponding page in M^j

From LEMMA 3.4 $m_j > m_i \Rightarrow \forall$ r,t, $(M_t^j)^i \supseteq M_t^i$ and $(S_t^j(m_j))^i \cap S_t^i = \emptyset$. Suppose the overflow from M^i, P_{oa}^i is caused by a reference to M^j. Then just before P_{oa}^i is overflowed, P_o^j exists in M^j. After the over-flow, P_{oa}^i finds its corresponding page still existing in M^j. Suppose the overflow, P_{oa}^i, is caused by a reference to M^r. Then just before the overflow from M^i, P_o^j exists in M^j and $(S_t^j(m_j))^i \cap S_t^i = \emptyset$ i.e., the information in the last page of M^j is not M^i. This means that the last page of M^j is not P_o^j, thus, the overflow page P_{oa}^i finds its corresponding page still in M^j after an overflow from M^j occurs.

PROOF of Part (b): $m_j \leq m_i \Rightarrow \exists\ r,t$, such that an overflow from M^i does not find its corresponding page in M^j.

From THEOREM 1, $m_j \leq m_i \Rightarrow \exists\ r,t$, $(M_t^j)^i \not\supseteq M_t^i$, then there exists $P_{za}^i \in M_t^i$ and $P_z^j \notin M_t^j$. We can find a reference string such that at the time of the overflow of P_{za}^i from M^i, P_z^j is still not in M^j. A string of references to M^r will produce this condition. Then at the time of overflow of P_{za}^i, it will not find its corresponding page in M^j.

$$Q.E.D.$$

THEOREM 6

Under GLOBAL-LRU-DOP, for $m_i \geq 2$, $\forall$ r,t, an overflow from M^i finds its corresponding page in M^j iff $m_j > 2m_i$

COROLLARY

Under GLOBAL-LRU-DOP, for $m_i \geq 2$, $\forall$ r,t, an overflow from M^i finds its corresponding page in M^j implies that $\forall$ r,t, $(M_t^j)^i \supseteq M_t^i$.

PROOF

This proof has two parts as shown below.

PROOF of Part (a): $m_j > 2m_i \Rightarrow \forall$ r,t, an overflow from M^i finds its corresponding page in M^j.

THEOREM 4 ensures that $m_j > 2m_i \Rightarrow \forall$ r,t, $(M_t^j)^i \supseteq M_t^i$

and LEMMA 4.1 ensures that $(S_t^j(m_j))^i \bigcap S_t^i = \emptyset$, we then use the same argument as in Part (a) of THEOREM 5.

PROOF of Part (b): $m_j \leq 2m_i \Rightarrow \exists$ r,t, such that an overflow from M^i does not find its corresponding page in M^j.

Case 1: $m_j < 2m_i$

$m_j < 2m_i \Rightarrow \exists$ r,t, $(M_t^j)^i \not\supseteq M_t^i$ (from the proof of part (a) of THEOREM 4). We then use the same argument as in Part (b) of THEOREM 5.

Case 2: $m_j = 2m_i$

The reference string r = "P_{1a}^i, P_{2a}^i, ..., $P_{(2m_i)a}^i$, $P_{(2m_i+1)a}^i$" will produce the following stacks

-137-

(at $t=2m_i+1$):

$$S_t^i = (P_{(2m_i)a}^i , P_{(2m_i-1)a}^i, \cdots, P_{(m_i+1)a}^i)$$

$$S_t^j = (P_{m_i}^j, P_{2m_i}^j, P_{m_i-1}^j, P_{2m_i-1}^j, \cdots, P_1^j, P_{m_i+1}^j)$$

In handling the next reference, to page $P_{(2m_i+1)a}^i$, the pages $P_{(m_i+1)a}^i$ and $P_{m_i+1}^j$ overflow at the same time, hence the overflow page $P_{(m_i+1)a}^i$ from M^i does not find its corresponding page in M^j.

<div align="center">Q.E.D.</div>

THEOREM 7

Let M^i (with m_i pages), M^j (with m_j pages) and M^r be System A. Let M'^i (with m_i' pages), M'^j (with m_j' pages) and M^r be System B. Let $m_i' \geq m_i$ and $m_j' \geq m_j$. Under GLOBAL-LRU-SOP, for any $m_i \geq 2$, no MLPA can exist if $m_j > m_i$ and $m_j' \geq m_i'$.

PROOF

We shall show that $\forall$ r,t, $(M_t^i \cup (M_t^j)^i) \subseteq (M'_t{}^i \cup (M'_t{}^j)^i)$
This will ensure that no MLPA can exist.

Since $m_i' \geq m_i$ and LRU is used in M^i and M'^i, we can apply the LRU stack inclusion property to obtain $M_t^i \subseteq M'_t{}^i$.

From THEOREM 5, we know that overflows from M^i or from M'^i always find their corresponding pages in M^j and M'^j respectively. Since SOP is used, these overflows can be treated as "no-ops". Thus, M^j and M'^j see the same reference string and we can apply the LRU stack inclusion property to obtain $M_t^j \subseteq M'_t{}^j$ (since $m_j' \geq m_j$ and LRU is used).

$M_t^i \subseteq M'_t{}^i$ and $M_t^j \subseteq M'_t{}^j \Rightarrow (M_t^i \cup (M_t^j)^i) \subseteq (M'_t{}^i \cup (M'_t{}^j)^i)$.

$$Q.E.D.$$

THEOREM 8

Let System A and System B be defined as in THEOREM 7.

Let $m_i' \geq m_i$ and $m_j' \geq m_j$. Under GLOBAL-LRU-DOP, for

any $m_i \geq 2$, no MLPA can exist if $m_j > 2m_i$ and $m_j' > 2m_i'$.

PROOF

We need the following preliminary results for this proof.

LEMMA 8.1

Let S_t^j be partitioned into two disjoint stacks, W_t and

V_t defined as follows: $W_t(k) = S_t^j(j_k)$ for $k=1,\ldots,|W_t|$

where $j_0=0$, and j_k is the minimum $j_k > j_{k-1}$ such that

$\exists P_{za}^i \in S_t^i$ and $P_{za}^i \subseteq S_t^j(j_k)$.

$V_t(k) = S_t^j(j_k)$ for $k=1, \ldots, |V_t|$ where $j_0=0$, and j_k

is the minimum $j_k > j_{k-1}$ such that $\forall P_{za}^i \in S_t^i$, $P_{za}^i \not\subseteq$

$S_t^j(j_k)$. (Intuitively, W_t is the stack obtained from

S_t^j by collecting those pages that have their corres-

ponding pages in M_t^i such that the order of these pages

in S_t^j is preserved. V_t is what is left of S_t^j after

W_t is formed.) Then, $\forall r,t$, (a) $W_t \overset{e}{=} \bar{S}_t^i$ and

(b) $V_t \subseteq O_t$ where O_t is the set of pages corresponding

to all the pages that ever overflowed from M^i, up to

time t.

PROOF of LEMMA 8.1

From THEOREM 4, $m_j > 2m_i \Rightarrow \forall r,t$, $(M_t^j)^i \supseteq M_t^i$. Thus,

for each page in M_t^i, its corresponding page is in M_t^j.

This set of pages in M_t^j is exactly W_t, and $W_t \subseteq \bar{S}_t^i$ by definition. Since the conditions for V_t and W_t are mutually exclusive and collectively exhaustive, the other pages in M_t^j that are not in W_t are by definition in V_t. Since a page in V_t does not have a corresponding page in M_t^i, its corresponding page must have once been in M^i because of Read-Through, and later overflowed from M^i. Thus a page in V_t is a page in O_t.

$$Q.E.D.$$

LEMMA 8.2

Any overflow page from M_t^j is a page in V_t

PROOF of LEMMA 8.2

From THEOREM 4, $m_j > 2m_i \Rightarrow \forall r,t, \ (M_t^j)^i \supseteq M_t^i$

From THEOREM 6, $m_j > 2m_i \Rightarrow \forall r,t$, an overflow from M^i always finds its corresponding page in M^j

An overflow from M_t^j is caused by a reference to M^r. An overflow from M_t^j also implies that there is an overflow from M_t^i.

Suppose the overflow page from M_t^j is P_o^j. Also suppose $P_o^j \ \varepsilon \ W_t$, i.e., $P_o^j \notin V_t$. We shall show that this leads to a contradiction.

The overflow page from M_t^i is either P_{oa}^i or $P_{ya}^i (y \neq o)$. If $P_{oa}^i \subseteq P_o^j$ is overflowed from M_t^i, THEOREM 6 is violated since P_{oa}^i and P_o^j overflow at the same time so P_{oa}^i will not find its corresponding page in M^j.

If $P_{ya}^i \not\subseteq P_o^j$ is overflowed from M_t^i, THEOREM 4 is violated since after the overflow handling, there exists a page $P_{ob}^i \subseteq P_o^j$ in M^i (since $P_o^j \ \varepsilon \ W_t$) but P_o^j is no longer in M^j.

Q.E.D.

LEMMA 8.3

If there is no overflow from either M^j or M'^j then $\forall \ r,t$, V_t and V'_t have the same reverse ordering.

Two stacks S^i and S^j are in the same reverse ordering,

$S^i \underline{\underline{ro}} \; S^j$, if $rS^i(k) = rS^j(k)$ for $1 \leq k \leq \min(|S^i|, |S^j|)$,

where rS denotes the stack obtained from S by reversing its ordering. By convention, $S^i \underline{\underline{ro}} \; S^j$ if $S^i = \emptyset$ or $S^j = \emptyset$

PROOF of LEMMA 8.3

To facilitate the proof, we introduce the following definitions:

(1) The <u>ordered parent stack</u>, $(S^i)^j$, of the stack S^i is the stack of parent pages corresponding to, and in the same ordering as, the pages in the reduced stack, $\bar{S}^i$, of S^i. Formally, $(S^i)^j \underline{\underline{e}} \; \bar{S}^i$ and $(S^i)^j \underline{\underline{o}} \; \bar{S}^i$

(2) Define a new binary operator, <u>concatenation</u> ($||$), between two stacks, S^1 and S^2, to produce a new stack, S, as follows:

$$S = S^1 || S^2, \text{ where } S(k) = \begin{cases} S^1(k) & \text{for } k=1, 2,\ldots,|S^1| \\ S^2(k) & \text{for } k=|S^1|+1,\ldots, \\ & \quad (|S^1| + |S^2|) \end{cases}$$

(3) Define a new binary operator, <u>ordered difference</u> ($\underline{o}$), between a stack S^1 and a set T, to produce a new stack, S, as follows:

$$S = S^1 \underline{o} \; T, \text{ where } S(k) = S^1(j_k) \text{ for } k=1,2,\ldots,$$
$$(|S^1| - |S^1 \cap T|),$$

such that $j_0 = 0$, j_k is the minimum $j_k > j_{k-1}$ such

that $S^1(j_k) \cap T = \emptyset$. Intuitively, S is obtained from S^1 by taking away those elements of S^1 which are also in T.

Figure 4.10 illustrates the LRU ordering of all Level i pages ever referenced up to time t. Since there is no overflow from either M^j of M'^j, the length of this LRU stack is less than or equal to $\min(m_j, m_j')$

By the definition of V_t', $V_t' = (Y_t)^j \underline{o} (S'^i_t)^j$

But $(S'^i_t)^j = (S^i_t)^j \, || \, (\, (X_t)^j \underline{o} (S^i_t)^j)$,

hence $V_t' = (Y_t)^j \underline{o} (\, (S^i_t)^j \, ||(\, (X_t)^j \underline{o} (S^i_t)^j))$

$$= (Y_t)^j \underline{o} ((S^i_t)^j \bigcup (X_t)^j)$$

Similarly, by the definition of V_t, $V_t = (Z_t)^j \underline{o} (S^i_t)^j$

But $(Z_t)^j = (X_t)^j \, || \, (\, (Y_t)^j \underline{o} (X_t)^j)$,

Hence $V_t = ((X_t)^j \underline{o}(S^i_t)^j) \, || \, (((Y_t)^j \underline{o} (X_t)^j) \underline{o} (S^i_t)^j)$

$$= ((X_t)^j \underline{o}(S^i_t)^j) \, || \, ((Y_t)^j \underline{o}((S^i_t)^j \bigcup (X_t)^j))$$

$$= ((X_t)^j \underline{o} (S^i_t)^j) \, || \, V_t'$$

Thus, the two stacks are in the same reverse ordering.

$$Q.E.D.$$

Figure 4.10

LEMMA 8.4

$\forall$ r,t, (a) $M'^j_t \supseteq M^j_t$, (b) V_t and V'_t are either in the same reverse ordering or the last element of V'_t is not an element of V_t

PROOF of LEMMA 8.4

(a) and (b) are true for any time before there is any overflow from either M^j or M'^j. (a) is true because any page ever referenced is in Level j, so a page found in M^j is also found in M'^j. (b) is true because of the result from LEMMA 8.3. Assume that (a) and (b) is true for t. Consider the next reference at t+1. Suppose this reference does not produce any overflow from either M^j or M'^j, then (a) still holds because $M'^j_t \supseteq M^j_t$ and $M'^i_t \supseteq M^i_t$ (See THEOREM 7). (b) still holds because overflows from M^j and M'^j are taken from the end of stacks V_t and V'_t respectively, and since there is no overflow from Level j, (b)'s validity is not disturbed. Suppose this reference does produce overflow(s) from Level j.

Case 1 : overflow from M'^j, no overflow from M^j :

This cannot happen since overflow from M'^j implies reference to M^r which in turn implies overflow from M^j also.

-146-

Case 2 : overflow from M^j, no overflow from M'^j :

- Suppose the last element in V'_t is not an element of V_t. Then starting from the end of V'_t, if we eliminate those elements not in V_t, the two stacks will be in the same reverse ordering. This follows from LEMMA 8.3 and is illustrated in Figure 4.11. Thus we see that overflow from M^j, i.e., overflowing the last page of V_t, will not violate (a) since this page is still in V'_t. (b) is still preserved since the last page in V'_t is still not in V_t.

- Suppose V'_t and V_t are in the same reverse ordering. Then overflowing the last page of V_t does not violate (a) and results in the last page of V'_t not in V_t.

Case 3 : overflow from M^j and overflow from M'^j :

- Suppose the last element in V'_t is not in V_t. Referring to Figure 4.11 in Case 2, we see the result of overflowing the last element of V'_t and the last element of V_t does not violate (a) and still preserves the condition that the last element of V'_t is not in V_t

- Suppose V'_t and V_t are in the same reverse ordering. Then overflowing the last elements of V'_t

Figure 4.11

and V_t leaves V_t' and V_t still in the same reverse ordering. (a) is not violated since the same page is overflowed form M'^j and M^j.

$$Q.E.D.$$

PROOF of THEOREM 8

$M'^i \supseteq M^i$ for the same reasons as those used in THEOREM 7.

From LEMMA 8.4 $M'^j \supseteq M^j$.

Hence, $(M_t^i \cup (M_t^j)^i) \subseteq (M'^i_t \cup (M'^j_t)^i)$

$$Q.E.D.$$

4.5   SUMMARY

We have developed a formal model of a data storage hier-
archy system specifically designed for very large databases.
This data storage hierarchy makes use of different page
sizes across different storage levels and maintains multiple
copies of the same information in different storage levels
of the hierarchy.

Four classes of algorithms obtained from natural exten-
sions to the LRU algorithm are formally defined and studied
in detail. Key properties of data storage hierarchy systems
that make use of these algorithms are identified and for-
mally proved.

It is found that for the LOCAL-LRU algorithms, no choice
of sizes for the storage levels can guarantee that a lower
storage level always contains all the information in the
higher storage levels. For the GLOBAL-LRU algorithms, by
choosing appropriate sizes for the storage levels, we can
(1) ensure the above multi-level inclusion property to hold
at all times for any reference string, (2) guarantee that no
extra page references to lower storage levels are generated
as a result of handling overflows, and (3) guarantee that no
multi-level paging anomaly can exist.

Chapter V

DESIGN OF THE DSH-11 DATA STORAGE HIERARCHY SYSTEM

5.1 INTRODUCTION

In chapter 3, DSH-1, a general structure of the INFOPLEX data storage hierarchy system is introduced. DSH-1 incorporates novel features to enhance its reliability and performance. Many alternative architectures of data storage hierarchies can be derived from DSH-1. These structures can be used to perform detail studies of various design issues concerning data storage hierarchies.

This chapter describes a simple structure of the INFOPLEX data storage hierarchy derived from DSH-1. This structure is called DSH-11 and is used to develop detail protocols for supporting the read and write operations. Multi-level inclusion properties of DSH-11 are then discussed.

5.2 STRUCTURE OF DSH-11

The general structure of DSH-11 is illustrated in Figure 5.1. There are h storage levels in DSH-11, denoted by L(1), L(2), ... , L(h). L(1) is the highest performance storage level. L(1) consists of k memory ports. Each memory port

Figure 5.1   Structure of DSH-11

-152-

is connected to a processor. All k memory ports share the
same local bus. A storage level controller (SLC) couples
the local bus to the global bus. The global bus connects
all the storage levels.

All other storage levels have the same basic structure.
In each storage level, there is an SLC which couples the
local bus to the global bus. There is a memory request pro-
cessor (MRP) that handles requests to the storage level.
There are a number of storage device modules (SDM's) that
store the data within the storage level. The SLC, MRP, and
SDM's share the same local bus.

The number of SDM's in different storage levels may be
different. The type of storage device in the SDM's in dif-
ferent storage levels are different. For high efficiency,
the block sizes of different storage levels are different.
$L(1)$ has a block size of $q(1)$, $L(2)$ has a block size of
$q(2)=n(1)*q(1)$, and so on, where $n(1)$, $n(2)$, ..., $n(h-1)$ are
non-zero integers.

5.2.1   The DSH-11 Interface

From the point of view of a processor connected to a
DSH-11 memory port, DSH-11 appears as a very large virtual
memory with $2**V$ bytes. The entire virtual address space is
byte addressable. The instructions for a processor are

stored in a local memory outside of DSH-11. This local memory has an address space of $2**G$ bytes. Hence, the effective data address space is $(2**V-2**G)$ bytes.

All operations on data within DSH-11 are performed in L(1). Thus, if a referenced data item is not in L(1), it has to be brought into L(1) from a lower storage level. This induces a delay on the instruction comparable to a page fault in virtual memory systems. Each processor has multiple register sets to support efficient multiprogramming. The key registers for interfacing with DSH-11 are the memory operation register (MOR), the memory address register (MAR), the memory buffer register (MBR), the operation status register (OSR), and the process identification register (PIR). The MAR is V bits wide and the MBR is n bytes wide, where n is less than q(1), the block size of L(1).

A read operation requests n bytes of data at location pointed to by MAR to be brought into the MBR. A write operation requests the n bytes of data in the MBR be written to the location pointed to by the MAR. We shall assume that the n bytes of data in a memory reference do not cross a L(1) block boundary (If a data item crosses block boundaries, multiple requests will be used so that each request only reference data within block boundaries).

A read or write operation may proceed at the speed of the L(1) devices when the referenced data is found in L(1). Otherwise, the operation is interrupted and the processor switches to another process while DSH-11 moves the referenced data into L(1) from a lower storage level. When the data is copied into L(1), the processor is again interrupted to complete the operation.

5.2.2 The Highest Performance Storage Level - L(1)

As illustrated in Figure 5.1, L(1) consists of k memory ports. Each memory port consists of a data cache controller (DCC) and a data cache duplex (DCD). A DCC communicates with the processor connecting to the memory port. A DCC also maintains a directory of all data in the DCD. All k memory ports share a local bus. The SLC serves as a gateway for communication between L(1) and other storage levels.

5.2.3 A Typical Storage Level - L(i)

A typical storage level, L(1), consists of a number of SDM's, an MRP, and an SLC. An SLC serves as the gateway for communication among storage levels. The MRP services requests to L(i). An SDM performs the actual reading and writing of data. An SDM consists of a device controller and the actual storage device.

To gain high throughput, communications over the global bus is in standard size packets. The packet size is such that it is sufficient for sending one L(1) data block. Communications over a local bus at L(i) is also in standard size packets. The size of a packet depends on the storage level and is chosen so that a packet is sufficient to send a data block of size q(i).

In the following sections, the read and write operations are discussed in detail.

5.3   ALGORITHMS FOR SUPPORTING THE READ OPERATION

5.3.1   The Read-Through Operation

A read request is issued by a processor to its data cache controller. The data cache controller checks its directory to see if the requested data is in the data cache. If the data is found in the data cache, it is retrieved and returned to the processor. If the data is not in the data cache, a read-through request is queued to be sent to the next lower storage level, L(2), via the storage level controller.

At a storage level, a read-through request is handled by the memory request processor. The memory request processor checks its directory to determine if the requested data is in one of the storage device modules at that level. If the data is not in the storage level, the read-through request

is queued to be sent to the next lower storage level via the storage level controller.

If the data is found in a storage level, L(i), a block containing the data is retrieved by the appropriate storage device module and passed to the storage level controller. The storage level controller broadcasts the block to all upper storage levels in several standard size packets. Each upper storage level has a buffer to receive these packets. A storage level only collect those packets that assemble into a sub-block of the appropriate size that contains the requested data. This sub-block is then stored in a storage device module.

At L(1), the sub-block containing the requested data is stored, and the requested data is sent to the processor with the proper identification.

Figure 5.2 illustrates the read-through operation. Assume that DSH-11 has only three storage levels, L(1) with block size b, L(2) with block size 2b, and L(3) with block size 4b. Suppose a reference to a data item 'x' is found in a block in L(3). Then the sub-block of size 2b containing 'x' is broadcasted to L(2) and L(1) simultaneously. L(2) will accept and store the entire sub-block of size 2b. L(1) will only accept and store a block of size b that contains

Figure 5.2 Illustration of Read Through

'x'. The two sub-blocks, each of size 2b of a <u>parent block</u> in L(3) are referred to as the <u>child blocks</u> of the parent block.

5.3.2 <u>Overflow Handling</u>

To accomodate a new data block coming into a storage level as a result of a read-through, an existing data block may have to be evicted. The block chosen for eviction is that which is the least recently referenced block such that none of its child blocks is in the immediate upper storage level. To support this scheme, each block is associated with an Upper Storage Copy Code (USC-code). If any of the child blocks of a data block is in the immediate upper storage level, its USC-code is set. Each time the last child block in L(i) of a parent block in L(i+1) is evicted from L(i), an <u>overflow</u> request is sent to L(i+1) to reset the USC-code of the parent block.

Blocks in L(1) and L(2) are handled slightly differently due to the use of data caches in L(1). Since multiple copies of the same data block may be in different data caches, evicting a block does not necessarily guarantee no other copy exists in L(1). The following strategy is adopted to overcome this difficulty. During a <u>read-through</u>, the USC-code of the block in L(2) is incremented by 1. Each

time a block in L(1) is evicted, an <u>overflow</u> request is sent
to L(2) to decrement the USC-code of the corresponding par-
ent block. This strategy does not require communications
among different data caches.

5.3.3 <u>Pathological</u> <u>Cases</u> <u>of</u> <u>Read-Through</u>

The parallel and asynchronous operations of DSH-11 and
the use of buffers at each storage level complicates algor-
ithms for handling the <u>read</u> operation. Pathological cases
that affect the algorithms are discussed below.

5.3.3.1 Racing Requests

Two different requests R1 and R2 may reference the same
block of data. Furthermore, these two requests may be
closed to each other such that both may be reading-through
the same block of data at some storage level. Since a data
block is transmitted in several packets asynchronously, each
packet must be appropriately identified to avoid confusion
when assembling the data sub-blocks at higher storage lev-
els.

A similar situation arises when R1 and R2 are closed
together such that R2 begins to read-through the same data
block that has just been read-through by R1. Thus a data
block arriving at a storage level may find that a copy of it

already exists at that storage level. In this case, the incoming data block is ignored. At L(1), this data block is ignored and the one in the data cache is read and returned to the processor, since this is the most recent copy of the data block.

5.3.3.2   Erronous Overflow

When a data block is evicted from L(i) to make room for an incoming data block, an overflow request containing the virtual address of the evicted data block may be generated. The purpose of the overflow request is to inform L(i+1) that there is no longer any data block in L(i) with the same family address as the virtual address in the overflow request. Hence, an overflow request is generated only when the last member of a family in L(i) is evicted.

The overflow request has to be forwarded to the MRP at L(i+1). At any point on the way to the MRP, a data block in the same family as the evicted block may be read-through into L(i). This poses the danger that when the MRP receives the overflow request indicating that no data block in the same family as the evicted block exists in L(i), there is actually one such block being placed in L(i).

The following strategy is incorporated in the algorithms that support the read-through operation to avoid such a potential hazard.

1. At the time the <u>overflow</u> request is to be created in L(i), a check is made to see if there is any data block in the same family as the evicted block that is currently in any buffer of L(i) waiting to be placed in L(i). If so, the <u>overflow</u> request is not created.

2. At the time a new data block arrives in L(i), any <u>overflow</u> request with the same family address as the incoming data block waiting to be sent to L(i+1) is purged.

3. When an <u>overflow</u> request arrives at L(i+1) from L(i), a check is made to see if there is any data block waiting to be sent to L(i) that has the same family address as the <u>overflow</u> request. If so, the <u>overflow</u> request is purged.

4. At the time a request is generated to send a data block to L(i), any <u>overflow</u> request from L(i) that is still waiting in L(i+1) that has the same family address as the data block to be sent to L(i) is purged.

5.3.3.3   Overflow to a Partially-assembled Block

Suppose that as a result of a read-through from L(i+2), B(i), the only child block of B(i+1), is in L(i) and B(i+1) is partly assembled in the buffer in L(i+1). It is possible that B(i+1) is still partly assembled in L(i+1) when B(i) is evicted from L(i). The <u>overflow</u> request will find that the corresponding parent data block is still being assembled in L(i+1). A solution to this difficulty is to check, at the time of arrival of the <u>overflow</u> request, if there is any incoming data block which is the target parent block of the evicted block as indicated in the <u>overflow</u> request. If so, the <u>overflow</u> request is held till this parent block has been placed in a storage device.

5.3.4 Transactions to Handle the Read Operation

A read request is issued by a processor to its data cache controller. If the data is not found in the data cache, it has to be brought up via a read-through. The read-through operation is realized via a number of transactions. The flow of transactions to support the read-through operation is illustrated in Figure 5.3.

A read-through transaction is created by a data cache controller and propagated to lower storage levels. At each storage level, the read-through transaction is handled by a memory request processor which checks its directory to see if the requested data is in the current storage level. If the data is not in the current storage level, the read-through transaction is sent to the next lower storage level.

Suppose that the data requested is found at L(i). The read-through transaction is terminated and a retrieve transaction is created to read the data from a storage device. A read-response-out transaction that contains the read data is sent to the storage level controller. The storage level controller generates a number of read-response-packet transactions which are broadcasted to all higher storage levels. Each of these transactions contains a sub-block of the requested data.

Figure 5.3   Transactions to Support
Read Through

-164-

At each higher storage level, an appropriate number of read-response-packet transactions are assembled into a read-response-in transaction which contains a data block of the appropriate size. The memory request processor obtains free space for the new data block in the read-response-in transaction either by using existing free space or by evicting an existing block. Eviction of an existing data block may result in an overflow transaction being sent to the next lower storage level. At the memory request processor, the read-response-in transaction is serviced and a store transaction is created. A storage device module handles the store transaction by writing the data to a storage device.

The following subsections describe the algorithms for handling each of the above transactions.

5.3.4.1   The read-through Transaction

The read-through transaction is created by a data cache controller and propagated down the storage levels via the storage level controllers. It has the following format:
(read-through, virtual-address, process-id),
where virtual-address is the virtual address of the referenced data item, and process-id consists of a CPU identifier and a process number. It is the identifier of the process that generated the read operation. The transaction is han-

dled by a memory request processor using the following algorithm.

1. Search directory for read-through.virtual-address.

2. If not found, forward the transaction to the storage level controller, which will send it to the next lower storage level.

3. If found, suppose it is in the i-th directory entry, and suppose directory(i).TRANSIT-code is not set, do:

   i) Set directory(i).USC-code to indicate a child block exists in the higher storage level for this block. If this is level L(2), increment directory(i).USC-code instead of setting it.

   ii) Set directory(i).HOLD-code to forbid any overflow to this block while the data is being retrieved.

   iii) Create a retrieve transaction :(retrieve, virtual-address,directory(i).real-address,p-rocess-id).

   iv) Send the retrieve transaction to the appropriate storage device module.

4. If found, suppose it is in the i-th directory entry, and suppose directory(i).TRANSIT-code is set, then hold the request and retry later. When the TRANSIT-code is set, it indicates that the corresponding data block is in transit, hence any reference to it is not allowed.

5. End.

5.3.4.2   The retrieve Transaction

The retrieve transaction is created by a memory request processor and handled by a storage device module as follows.

1. Read the data block using retrieve.real-address.

2. Create a read-response-out transaction :(read-
    response-out, virtual-address, process-id, data),
    where data is the block containing the referenced
    data item.

3. Send the read-response-out transaction to the sto-
    rage level controller.

4. End.

5.3.4.3   The read-response-out Transaction

The read-response-out transaction is created by a storage

device module and handled by a storage level controller

using the following algorithm.

1. Purge any incoming overflow transaction that has
    the same family address as read-response-
    out.virtual-address.

2. Send (update-directory, virtual-address,HOLD-
    code=0) to memory request processor to reset the
    HOLD-code, so that overflow to this block is now
    allowed.

3. Broadcast the transaction (reserve-space, virtu-
    al-address, process-id) to all higher storage lev-
    els to reserve buffer space for assembling
    read-response-out.data.

4. Wait till all higer levels have acknowleged the
    space reservation transaction.

5. Generate the appropriate number of (read-res-
    ponse-packet, virtual-address, process-id, data,
    data-virtual-address) transactions. Data is a
    standard size sub-block and data-virtual-address
    is the virtual address of this sub-block.

6. Broadcast each read-response-packet transaction to
    all higher storage levels.

7. End.

5.3.4.4   The read-response-packet Transaction

This transaction is created by a storage level controller and broadcasted to all higher storage level controllers where they are assembled into read-response-in transactions to be handled by the memory request processors. Note that a storage level only accepts those packets relevant for assembling into a data block of the appropriate size, all other associated packets are ignored. The following algorithm is used by a storage level controller in assembling the read-response-in transactions.

1. If this is the first packet of the assembly, do:

    i)   Purge any outgoing overflow transaction that
          has the same family address as the block
          being assembled.

    ii)   Add the packet to the assembly.

2. If this is an intermediary packet of the assembly,
    simply add it to the assembly.

3. If this is the last packet of the assembly, do:

    i)   Replace the assembly by a (read-response-
          in, virtual-address, process-id, data) tran-
          saction. Data is the block just assembled.

    ii)   Send the above transaction to the memory
          request processor.

4. End.

5.3.4.5   The read-response-in Transaction

This transaction is created by a storage level controller and sent to a data cache controller (for L(1)) or to a memory request processor (for L(2), L(3), ...).

The following algorithm is used by a data cache controller in handling this transaction.

1. Purge any outgoing overflow transaction that has the same family address as the block in the read-response-in transaction.

2. Search directory for read-response-in.virtual-address.

3. If found, suppose it is the i-th directory entry, do:

   i)   Read data from the data cache using directory(i).real-address.

   ii)   Send data to the processor.

   iii) Increment directory(i).USC-code by 1.

4. If not found, do:

   i)   Select a block to be evicted (assuming that data cache is full). This is the least recently referenced block such that it is not engaged in a stored-behind process. Suppose this block corresponds to directory(i).

   ii)   Obtain directory(i).virtual-address, directory(i).USC-code, and directory(i).real-address.

   iii) Write read-response-in.data into location directory(i).real-address in the data cache.

   iv)   Return read-response-in.data to the processor.

v) Create (overflow, directory(i).virtual-
        address, USC-code=directory(i).USC-code)
        transaction, send it to the storage level
        controller.

vi) Update directory(i).virtual-address with
         read-response-in.virtual-address.

vii) Set directory(i).USC-code to 1.

5. End.

At a memory request processor, the read-response-in tran-

saction is handled as follows.

1. Purge any outgoing overflow transaction with the
    same family address as the data block in the
    read-response-in transaction.

2. Search for read-response-in.virtual-address in the
    directory.

3. If not found, do:

    i) Select a block to be evicted (assuming that
            the storage level is full). This is the
            least recently referenced block such that it
            is not engaged in a store-behind process, it
            is not held (i.e., HOLD-code = 0), and it is
            not in transit (i.e., TRANSIT-code = 0).
            Suppose this block corresponds to direc-
            tory(i).

    ii) Obtain directory(i).virtual-address and
             directory(i).real-address.

    iii) If the evicted block is the last of its
              family in the storage level and that there
              is no incoming block with the same family
              address then create a (overflow, direc-
              tory(i).virtual-address, USC-code=1) tran-
              saction. Send the transaction to the sto-
              rage level controller to be sent to the next
              lower storage level.

    iv) Set directory(i).TRANSIT-code to 1 to indi-
             cate the corresponding block is in transit.

v) Update directory(i).virtual-address with
    read-response-in.virtual-address.

vi) Set directory(i).USC-code to 1.

vii) Create a (store, directory(i).real-address,
      data) transaction and send it to the appro-
      priate storage device module.

4. End.

5.3.4.6   The store Transaction

This transaction is handled by a SDM. Store.data is
placed in store.location, and a transaction (update-direc-
tory, virtual-address, TRANSIT-code = 0) is sent to the MRP
to reset the TRANSIT-code so that references to this block
is now allowed.

5.3.4.7   The overflow Transaction

This transaction is created by a data cache controller or
a memory request processor and routed to a memory request
processor in the lower storage level via the storage level
controllers. At each stop on the way to a memory request
processor, a check is made to see if any incoming data block
has the same family address as the overflow transaction. If
so, the following algorithm is executed.

1. If the direction of flow of the overflow and
    read-response-in are opposite, the overflow is
    purged.

2. If the direction of flow of the overflow and the
    read-response-out are opposite, the overflow is
    purged.

3. If the two transactions are in the same direction
    of flow, the <u>overflow</u> is held to be processed
    after the <u>read-response-in</u> is handled.

At a memory request processor, if the HOLD-code is set

for the parent block of the overflowed block, the <u>overflow</u>

transaction is purged (HOLD-code is set indicates that the

block is being retrieved by an SDM to be read-through to all

upper storage levels). Otherwise, the USC-code of the par-

ent block is decremented by overflow.USC-code.

5.4   <u>ALGORITHMS</u> <u>TO</u> <u>SUPPORT</u> <u>THE</u> <u>WRITE</u> <u>OPERATION</u>

Algorithms to support the write operation are simplified

by the multi-level inclusion properties of DSH-11. The mul-

ti-level inclusion properties of DSH-11 guarantee that all

the data items in L(i) is contained in L(i+1). Thus, when

writing a child block in L(i) to its parent block in L(i+1),

the parent block is guaranteed to exist in L(i+1). The mul-

ti-level inclusion properties of DSH-11 will be discussed in

a later section.

5.4.1   The <u>Store-Behind</u> <u>Operation</u>

After a block is placed in a data cache as a result of a

read-through operation, its parent block exists in L(2), and

its grand-parent block exists in L(3), and so on. Due to

the multi-level inclusion properties of DSH-11, this situa-

tion will persist as long as the block is in the data cache.

After a data block in a data cache is updated, it is sent down to the next lower storage level to replace the corresponding child block in its parent block. This updated parent block is sent down to the next lower storage level to update its parent block, and so on. This process is refered to as the store-behind operation and takes place at slack periods of system operation.

DSH-11 uses a two-level store-behind strategy. This strategy ensures that an updated block will not be considered for eviction from a storage level until its parent and grand-parent blocks are updated. This scheme will ensure that at least two copies of the updated data exists in DSH-11 at any time. To support this scheme, a Store-Behind Code (SB-code) is associated with each data block in a storage level. The SB-code indicates the number of acknowledgements from lower storage levels that the block must receive before it can be considered for eviction.

In a write operation, the data item is written into the data cache duplex, and the processor is notified of the completion of the write operation. we shall assume that the data item to be written is already in L(1) (This can be realized by reading the data item into L(1) before the write operation). A store-behind operation is next generated by the data cache controller and sent to the next lower storage

Figure 5.4(a)   Illustration of Store Behind (a)

Figure 5.4(b)   Illustration of Store Behind (b)

Figure 5.4(c)   Illustration of Store Behind (c)

level. The block in L(1) that has just been updated is marked with a count of 2. This is illustrated in Figure 5.4(a).

When a store-behind operation is received in L(2), the addressed data is written, and marked with a count of 2. An acknowledgement is sent to the next upper storage level, L(1), and a store-behind operation is sent to the next lower storage level, L(3). When an acknowledgement is received at L(1), the counter for the addressed data item is decremented by 1, which becomes 1. This is illustrated in Figure 5.4(b).

The store-behind is handled in L(3) by updating the appropriate data block. An acknowledgement is sent to L(2). At L(2), the corresponding block counter is decremented by 1, which becomes 1. The acknowledgement is forwarded to L(1). At L(1), the corresponding block counter is decremented by 1 which now becomes 0, hence the block is elligible for replacement. This is illustrated in Figure 5.4(c).

Thus we see that the two-level store-behind strategy maintains at least two copies of the written data at all times. Furthermore, lower storage levels are updated at slack periods of system operation, thus enhancing performance. Detail algorithms for supporting this scheme will be discussed in a later section.

5.4.2 Lost Updates

Several different updates to the same block will result in several different store-behind requests be sent to the next lower storage level. It is possible that these store-behind requests arrive at the next storage level out of sequence, resulting in lost updates.

To resolve this potential hazard, there is a time-stamp associated with each block indicating the last time the block was updated. There is also a time-stamp associated with each child block of the parent block indicating the last time the child block was updated by a store-behind operation. A store-behind request will contain the block to be updated and its time-stamp. This time-stamp will be compared with that of the corresponding child block in the target parent block. Only when the store-behind data is more recent will the update to the target parent block be performed.

5.4.3 Transactions to Support the Write Operation

Figure 5.5 illustrates the transactions to support the write operation. We shall assume that the target block of a write operation already exists in a data cache. This can be ensured by first reading the target block before issuing the write request to the data cache. After the data is written into a target data block in a data cache, a store-behind

- 178 -

Figure 5.5   Transactions to Support Store Behind

transaction containing the updated block is sent to the next lower storage level. The store-behind transaction is serviced by the memory request processor. The memory request processor generates an update transaction and sends it to the appropriate storage device module. The memory request processor also sends an ack-store-behind transaction to the higher storage level. The storage device module handles the update transaction by replacing the corresponding child block in the target parent block with the data in the store-behind transaction. Another store-behind transaction containing the updated parent block is created and sent to the storage level controller to be forwarded to the next lower storage level.

A store-behind transaction is sent to the next lower storage level in several standard size packets, each corresponds to a store-behind-packet transaction. At a storage level controller, these packets are assembled into the original store-behind transaction. The algorithms for sending and assembling packets are very similar to those used for the read-through operation and will not be repeated here. The following describes the algorithms for supporting the above transactions to realize the write operation.

5.4.3.1   The store-behind Transaction

A <u>store-behind</u> transaction has the following format:

(<u>store-behind</u>, virtual-address,process-id,data,time-stamp)

This transaction is handled by a memory request processor

using the following algorithm.

1.   Search directory for store-behind.virtual-address.

2.   If not found, hold the transaction and retry after
     a time out, because the target parent block is
     still being assembled in the buffer.

3.   If found, compare store-behind.time-stamp with the
     time-stamp of the corresponding child block of the
     target parent block.

4.   If store-behind.data is more current than the
     child block, do:

     i)   Send (<u>update</u>, virtual-address, data, real-
             address, time-stamp-of-parent) to the appro-
             priate storage device module.

     ii)   Update the time-stamp of the child block
             with store-behind.time-stamp.

     iii)   Send (<u>ack-store-behind</u>, virtual-address,
             process-id, ACK-code = 2) to the immediate
             higher storage level. ACK-code indicates
             the number of levels this transaction is to
             be routed upwards.

5.   If store-behind.data is not more current than data
     in storage level, send two (<u>ack-store-behind</u>,
     virtual-address, process-id, ACK-code = 2) to the
     immediate higher storage level.

6.   End.

5.4.3.2   The update Transaction

The <u>update</u> transaction is handled by a storage device module using the following algorithm.

1. Replace the appropriate child block in the target parent block by update.data.

2. The updated target parent block is retrieved.

3. Send (<u>update-directory</u>, virtual-address, SB-code = 2) to the memory request processor to increment SB-code of the target parent block by 2.

4. (<u>store-behind</u>, virtual-address, process-id,target-parent-block, time-stamp = update.time-stamp-of-parent) is sent to the storage level controller to be sent to the next lower storge level.

5. End.

5.4.3.3   The ack-store-behind Transaction

This transaction is handled by a memroy request processor. The algorithm used is as follows.

1. The SB-code of the corresponding block is decremented by 1.

2. The ack-store-behind.ACK-code is decremented by 1.

3. If ack-store-behind.ACK-code is greater than 0 the forward the <u>ack-store-behind</u> to the immediate upper storage level.

4. End.

5.5   MULTI-LEVEL INCLUSION PROPERTIES

As a result of the read-through operation, the block read-through into L(1) leaves its 'shadow' in every lower storage level that participated in the read-through operation.   Is it true then, that a storage level, L(i), always contains every data block in L(i-1)?   When this is true, multi-level inclusion (MLI) is said to hold.

It has been formally proved in Chapter 4 that certain algorithms incorporating the read-through strategy can guarantee MLI provided that the relative sizes of the storage levels be appropriately chosen.   Furthermore, it is found that certain other algorithms can never guarantee MLI.   This section explores the MLI properties of DSH-11.   In the following sections, the importance of MLI is briefly reviewed, a model of DSH-11 is developed, and the MLI property of DSH-11 is analyzed informally.

5.5.1   Importance of MLI

The MLI properties have important implications for the performance and availability of DSH-11.   First, since the block size of L(i) is larger than that of L(i-1), L(i) can be viewed as an extension of the spatial-locality (Madnick, 1973) of L(i-1).   Second, except for the lowest storage level, each data item has at least two copies in different

storage levels. Hence, even the failure of an entire storage level will not result in data loss. __Third__, algorithms to support the __write__ operation is simplified if MLI holds because a store-behind operation always finds the target parent data block exists in a storage level.

5.5.2   A Model of DSH-11

Figure 5.6 illustrates a model of DSH-11. DSH-11 has h storage levels, $L(1)$, $L(2)$, ... , $L(h)$. $L(1)$ consists of k data caches. Each data cache consists of a buffer $B(1,i)$, and a storage, $M(1,i)$. All the buffers of the data caches are collectively denoted as $B(1)$, and all the storage of the data caches are collectively denoted as $M(1)$. The size of $B(1,i)$ is $b(1,i)$ number of blocks of size $q(1)$. The size of $M(1,i)$ is $m(1,i)$ number of blocks of size $q(1)$. Hence $L(1)$ has $b(1) = b(1,1) + b(1,2) + ... + b(1,k)$ blocks of buffer space and $m(1) = m(1,1) + m(1,2) + ... + m(1,k)$ blocks of storage space.

A buffer is for holding data blocks coming into or going out of the storage level. A data block may be partially assembled in a buffer. Only data blocks in the storage space are accounted for by the directory. Note that a buffer is not used for holding transactions that do not contain any data, e.g. an __ack-store-behind__ transaction does not occupy any buffer space.

Figure 5.6   A Model of DSH-11

A typical storage level, L(i), consists of a buffer B(i), and a storage, M(i). The size of B(i) is b(i) number of blocks each of size q(i). The size of M(i) is m(i) number of blocks each of size q(i). The block size of L(i) is q(i), where q(i) = n(i-1)*q(i-1), for i = 2, 3, ... , h. The n(i)'s are integers.

5.5.3   MLI Properties of DSH-11

Based on the model in the previous section, the MLI condition can be stated as follows: a data block, whole or partially assembled, that is found in L(i) is also found in L(i+1). This section shows that for DSH-11, it is possible to guarantee the following: (1) MLI holds at all times, (2) it is always possible to find a block for eviction to make room for an incoming block, and (3) an overflow transaction from L(i) always finds its target parent block in L(i+1).

Proposition

Let J = i + 1. Using the algorithms described in the previous sections, if m(j) is greater than m(i)+b(i) then

1. MLI holds for L(i) and L(j), i.e., any block found in L(i) can be found in L(j),

2. If block replacement in M(j) is required, there is always a block not in L(i) that can be considered for overflow, and

3. An overflow transaction from L(i) always contains the address of a block that can be found in M(j).

Proof of Proposition

There are three cases:

1. There are no overflows from $L(i)$: Since $m(j)$ is
    greater than $m(i)+b(i)$, no overflow from $L(i)$
    implies no overflow from $L(j)$. Thus all blocks
    present in $L(i)$ are still in $L(j)$, i.e., (1) is
    true.

2. There are overflows from $L(i)$, no overflow from
    $L(j)$: No overflow from $L(j)$ implies that all
    blocks referenced so far are still in $L(j)$. Thus
    any block in $L(i)$ is still in $L(j)$, i.e., (1) is
    true. Since any overflow from $L(i)$ will find the
    block still in $L(j)$, (3) is true.

3. There are overflows from $L(j)$: Consider the first
    overflow from $L(j)$. Just before the overflow, (1)
    is true. Also just before the overflow, $M(j)$ is
    full. $M(j)$ is full and $m(j)$ is greater than
    $m(i)+b(i)$ implies that there is at least one block
    in $M(j)$ that is not in $L(i)$ (i.e., their USC-code
    = 0). Choose from these blocks the least recently
    referenced block such that its SB-code = 0. If no
    such block exists, wait, and retry later. Eventu-
    ally the store-behind process for these blocks
    will be terminated and these blocks will be
    released. Thus a block will be available for
    overflow from $M(j)$. Thus (2) is true. After the
    overflow, (1) is still preserved. (1) and (2)
    implies (3).

If next reference causes no overflow from $L(j)$, then the

arguement in Case 2 applies. If the next reference causes

overflow from $L(j)$, then the arguement in Case 3 applies.

5.6   SUMMARY

The DSH-11 design, a data storage hierarchy for the INFO-

PLEX data base computer, is described. Protocols for sup-

porting the read and write operations in DSH-11 are des-

cribed in detail. It is then shown that DSH-11 is able to guarantee multi-level inclusion at all times for any reference string provided that the sizes of the buffers and storage at the storage levels are chosen appropriately.

Chapter VI

SIMULATION STUDIES OF THE DSH-11 DATA STORAGE HIERARCHY
SYSTEM

6.1   INTRODUCTION

This chapter discusses the results of a series of simula-
tion studies of the DSH-11 data storage hierarchy system.

A key objective of these simulation studies is to assess
the feasibility of supporting very large transaction rates
(millions of reads and writes per second) with good response
time (less than a millisecond) using the DSH-11 storage
hierarchy and the read-through and store-behind algorithms.

A GPSS/360 simulation model is developed for a DSH-11
configuration with one processor and three storage levels.
The results obtained from this model are very interesting.
It is found that, at very high locality levels, when most of
the references are satisfied by the highest performance sto-
rage level, the store-behind algorithm interacts with the
DSH-11 buffer management algorithms to create a system dead-
lock. This has not been anticipated in the design of
DSH-11, and has led to a redesign of the DSH-11 buffer man-
agement scheme.

Another GPSS/360 simulation model is developed for a
DSH-11 configuration with five processors and four storage
levels. This model makes use of deadlock-free buffer man-
agement algorithms. Results from this model reveal further
interesting properties of the store-behind algorithm and of
the DSH-11 design. It is found that at high locality lev-
els, the store-behind requests form a pipeline. Thus the
rate of write operations that can be serviced is limited by
the slowest stage in the pipeline, i.e., the slowest storage
device. It is also found that a bottleneck may be developed
at the lowest level when the block size of that level is too
large.

A well-balanced system is obtained by increasing the
degree of parallelism in the lower storage levels and by
decreasing the block sizes used by these storage levels.
This system is then used as a basis to compare the perfor-
mance of the DSH-11 architecture under different technology
assumptions. It is found that using 1979 technologies, a
throughput of .7 million operations per second with mean
response time of 60 microseconds are obtained for a mix of
storage references consisting of 30 percent read requests.
Using 1985 technologies, the same storage reference mix pro-
duces a throughput of 4 million operations per second with
10 microseconds mean response time.

6.2   A SIMULATION MODEL OF DSH-11 : THE P1L3 MODEL

The P1L3 model of DSH-11 is a GPSS/360 model of a DSH-11 configuration with one processor and three storage levels. It represents a basic structure from which extensions to include more processors and storage levels can be made. The structure of P1L3 is illustrated in Figure 6.1(a). Each module in Figure 6.1(a) actually consists of four queues and a facility (Figure 6.1(b)). The facility is referred to as the request processor (RP). There are two input queues, one for transactions with data (the XQ), and one for transactions with messages (the IQ). The two corresponding output queues are named YQ and OQ respectively. The XQs and YQs have limited capacity, since they are the data buffers. There is no limit on the lengths of the IQs and the OQs. The following example illustrates the naming conventions used in the model. The K2 module actually consists of the KRP2, KIQ2, KOQ2, KXQ2 and KYQ2. The current length of KXQ2 is denoted as KXL2 and the maximum allowable length of KXQ2 is denoted as KXM2.

6.2.1   An Illustration of the DSH-11 Algorithms

A listing of the P1L3 model is presented in Appendix A. To illustrate the model logic, the following is a brief description of the path followed by a read-through transaction. A read request (TXN) is queued in KIQ3 (the input message

Figure 6.1(a)   The P1L3 Configuration

Figure 6.1(b)   A Module in P1L3

DEGREE OF MULTIPROGRAMING OF A CPU = 20

SIZES OF DATA QUEUES (XQ AND YQ) = 10

DIRECTORY SEARCH TIME = 200 NANOSEC.

READ/WRITE TIME OF A $L(1)$ STORAGE DEVICE = 100 NANOSEC.

READ/WRITE TIME OF A $L(2)$ DEVICE = 1000 NANOSEC.

READ/WRITE TIME OF A $L(3)$ DEVICE = 10000 NANOSEC.

BUS SPEED = 10 MHZ

BUS WIDTH = 8 BYTES

SIZE OF A TRANSACTION WITHOUT DATA = 8 BYTES

BLOCK SIZE AT $L(1)$ = 8 BYTES

BLOCK SIZE AT $L(2)$ = 128 BYTES

BLOCK SIZE AT $L(3)$ = 1024 BYTES

% READ REQUESTS = 70%

% WRITE REQUESTS = 30%

CONDITIONAL PROB. OF FINDING DATA IN A LEVEL
GIVEN THAT THE DATA IS NOT IN ANY UPPER LEVEL = P

Figure 6.2   Input Parameters to P1L3

queue of the storage level controller at level 3). When KRP3 is free, TXN is serviced and put into KOQ3. When LBUS3 is available, TXN is sent to RIQ3 (the input message queue of the memory request processor at level 3) where it waits for RRP3, the request processor. RRP3 then searches its directory to obtain the real address for TXN. TXN is put into ROQ3 to be sent to a storage device, say, D31. When LBUS3 is free, TXN is sent to DIQ31 (the input message queue for device D31). TXN waits in DIQ31 for DRP31 to be free and also for a slot in DYQ31 (the output data queue for D31) to hold the retrieved data. When both conditions are met, DRP31 retrieves the data and puts it in DYQ31 where it waits for the LBUS3 to be free and for there to be a slot in KXQ3 (the input data queue of the storage level controller at level 3) to hold the data. When both conditions are met, the data is sent to KXQ3. Then the data is put in KYQ3 waiting for the GBUS and for all the upper storage levels to be free to receive the broadcast...

6.2.2   The P1L3 Model Parameters

The model is highly parametized. Parameters for the P1L3 model are chosen to reflect current (1979) processor and storage technology. A key parameter that characterizes the references made to DSH-11 is the locality level. The local-ity level (P) is the condition probability that a reference

is satisfied at a given storage level given that the reference is not satisfied in all upper storage levels. Figure 6.2 summarizes all the model parameters.

6.3 SIMULATION RESULTS OF THE P1L3 MODEL

Three different locality levels are used for the P1L3 model. The simulated time is one milisecond (one million time units in the model). Some unusual phenomena are uncovered during the analysis of these preliminary results. This leads to more extensive simulation studies to obtain more data points. A plausible theory is then proposed to explain these phenomena. Detail traces of the model is used to verify the theory. The findings are discussed in the following subsections.

6.3.1 Preliminary Studies Using the P1L3 Model

A series of three simulation studies are carried out with three locality levels : high (P=.85), medium (P=.5), and low (P=.2). Throughputs, mean response times and utilizations of the facilities are summarized in Figure 6.3.

Throughput in millions transactions per second are plotted against the locality levels in Figure 6.4. From Figure 6.4, it seems that a throughput of .6 million transactions per second is the maximum that one could obtain with this configuration.

Locality Level	.85	.50	.20
Throughput per millisecond	598	548	286
GBUS Utilization	.23	.50	.41
LBUS1 Utilization	.05	.09	.07
Data Cache Utilization	.19	.19	.10
LBUS2 Utilization	.26	.65	.63
D21 Utilization	.09	.17	.11
LBUS3 Utilization	.35	.62	.52
D31 Utilization	.52	.99	1.00
Mean Response Time (Nsec)	6021	31324	64032

Figure 6.3 Preliminary Results of the PIL3 Model

Figure 6.4   Throughput Vs. Locality Level
(P1L3 Preliminary Results)

Figure 6.5   Mean Response Time Vs. Locality Level
(PlL3 Preliminary Results)

Figure 6.6   Utilization Vs. Locality Level
(PlL3 Preliminary Results)

Mean response time per transaction are plotted against locality levels in Figure 6.5. This shows that a mean response time of 5 micro seconds is obtainable at high locality levels. Furthermore, as the locality level increases, there will be more references being satisfied in the high performance storage levels, thus the mean response time will decrease.

Utilizations of the various facilities are plotted against locality levels in Figure 6.6. It can be seen from these plots that at low locality levels, the slowest storage level becomes a system bottleneck. At higher locality levels, bus utilizations drop because most references are satisfied by the data cache, DRP11, making the use of the buses unnecessary except for store-behind operations.

At high locality levels, one would also expect the utilization of the data cache, DRP11, to be very high. However, this is not supported by the data. In fact, even though the throughput at the P=.85 locality level is larger than that at the P=.50 locality level, the DRP11 utilization actually drops.

Examine the data more closely, another puzzle is discovered. If one multiply throughput by the mean response time divided by the maximum degree of multiprogramming, one

should obtain a number closed to the simulated time

(1,000,000). For the P=.20 case, this number comes out to

be 915657. For the P=.50 case, this number comes out to be

858277. But for the P=.85 case, this number is only 180027.

It is suspected that either the data is wrong or there are

some unusual blocking phenomena in the system in the P=.85

case.

6.3.2   More Extensive Studies Using the P1L3 Model

Since it is not difficult to obtain more data points by

varying the locality levels, a second series of simulations

is carried out. The results of these simulations are pre-

sented in Figure 6.7.

Throughputs are plotted against locality levels in Figure

6.8. This shows that as the locality level increases,

throughput also increases. A throughput of closed to one

million transactions per second is obtainable at about P=.80

locality level. However, after the P=.80 point, throughput

drops sharply as the locality level increases. This

requires some explaination.

In Figure 6.9, mean response time is plotted against

locality levels. This shows that as locality level

increases, mean response time decreases. This plot does not

seem to provide insight as to why throughput decrease shar-

ply after the P=.80 locality level.

Locality Level	Throughput/ millisecond	GBUS Utilization	LBUS1 Utilization	Data Cache Utilization	LBUS2 Utilization	D21 Utilization	LBUS3 Utilization	D31 Utilization	Mean Response Time in nanosecond
.95	532	.14	.03	.15	.16	.05	.21	.25	3986
.90	581	.16	.04	.17	.19	.06	.26	.42	3957
.85	589	.23	.52	.19	.26	.09	.35	.52	6021
.80	947	.50	.94	.31	.57	.19	.71	.99	16298
.70	811	.53	.10	.27	.65	.20	.69	1.00	23317
.65	758	.51	.10	.26	.62	.18	.68	1.00	22505
.60	698	.51	.10	.23	.63	.19	.65	1.00	27114
.50	548	.50	.10	.20	.65	.17	.62	1.00	31324
.40	456	.45	.08	.16	.63	.15	.59	1.00	39142
.30	320	.42	.07	.12	.60	.12	.52	1.00	56908
.20	286	.42	.07	.10	.63	.11	.52	1.00	64032

Figure 6.7 P1L3 Model - Extensive Results

THROUGHPUT IN 10^6 REQUESTS PER SECOND

Figure 6.8   Throughput Vs. Locality Level
(P1L3 Extensive Results)

Figure 6.9   Mean Response Time Vs. Locality Level
(PlL3 Extensive Results)

6.3.3 A Plausible Theory of Operation

One theory to explain the sharp drop in throughput at very high locality levels is that at such high locality levels, the rate of write operations being generated is very high. Since a write will not proceed until DRP11 is free (to write the data), and DRP11's YQ has a buffer slot (for holding the store-behind operation), the write operation may hold up other transactions in their use of DRP11. Since the utilization of DRP11 is very low, the blocking must be due to the YQ being full often. Many store-behind transactions closed togther will tend to make the YQ full often. These blocking transactions will tend to hold up other transactions hence resulting in low system throughput.

If the YQ is full often, it must be because transactions in it cannot move on to the next facility. This will happen if the bus LBUS1 is busy or the XQ buffer of K1 is full, or both. From the data, we see that all the bus utilizations are very low, hence the blocking must be due to the fact that the XQ buffer of K1 is full often. Proceeding in this manner, one could argue that at high locality levels, the rate of store-behind operations is very high, which results in store-behind transactions being backed up from a storage device. This backing up of store-behind operations causes long queueing delays for other transactions as well, result-

ing in low system throughput. This blocking situation also prevents DRP11 to be kept busy as evident from its low utilization.

We can now explain why the utilization of DRP11 at the P=.85 locality level is lower than that at the P=.50 locality level. At P=.85, due to the store-behind transactions being backed up, very few acknowledgements to the store-behind transactions ever return to DRP11. In the P=.50 case, most acknowledgements to store-behind transactions return to DRP11. Thus, even though the number of reads and writes handled by DRP11 in the P=.50 case is lower than that handled by the DRP11 in the P=.85 case, there are many more acknowledgements serviced by DRP11 in the P=.50 case, hence the corresponding utilization is higher.

There are no backing up of store-behind transactions in the low locality level cases because the rate at which they are generated is low. Since the store-behind transactions are separated from one another there is enough time for a device to service a previous store-behind transaction before another one comes along.

6.3.4   Verification of Theory with Data

The above theory seems to explain the phenomena well and agrees well with the observed data. To verify the theory, detail model traces are examined to determine the status of the system at the time of simulation termination.

It is found that for low locality levels, there is indeed no backing up of the store-behind transactions. There is a backlog of requests to be processed by the lowest storage level devices due to their large service times. For high locality levels, starting from P=.85, store-behind transactions begin to be backed up, from storage level 2. However, the back up is due to a system deadlock developed at storage level 2, and not due to the slower speeds of the devices, as hypothesized above.

The deadlock at storage level 2 is illustrated in Figure 6.10. All the XQs and YQs are full. A store-behind transaction in DYQ21 is waiting for LBUS2 and a KXQ2 buffer slot. LBUS2 is free but KXQ2 buffer is full. KXQ2 will not be cleared because KYQ2 is full. KYQ2 cannot be cleared because both buffer of R2 are full. These buffers cannot be cleared because DXQ21 and DYQ21 are full. DYQ21 cannot be cleared because it is waiting for KXQ2 to be cleared. Thus a deadlock is developed. This deadlock causes the XQs and YQs in the upper storage levels to be gradually filled as

Figure 6.10   Deadlock In P1L3 Model

more store-behind transactions are generated. When YQ at
DRP11 is full, the system will be held up when the next
write transaction arrives.

It is interesting to note that this deadlock only occurs
at very high locality levels. This is beacuse at high
locality levels, the rate of store-behind transactions gen-
erated is very high. Comparing the P=.95 case and the P=.50
case, even though the same number of store-behind transac-
tions are generated to lower storage levels in both cases,
the rate at which they are generated in the P=.95 case is 30
times that of the P=.50 case. Store-behind transactions
sparsely separated from one another give chance for the dev-
ice to service them, therefore avoiding a deadlock. This
deadlock situation is not too different from a traffic jam
at a Boston rotary during rush hour.

In retrospect, the causes of the deadlock are due to the
rate of store-behind transactions and the use of one single
buffer for data coming into a storage level as well as for
data going out of a storage level. The potential for dead-
lock of using a common buffer was not discovered during the
design of DSH-11 due to the complex interactions of the var-
ious protocols for store-behind, read-through, and overflow
handling operations.

6.4   DEADLOCK-FREE BUFFER MANAGEMENT SCHEMES

In the DSH-11 simulation model, there are five types of transactions supporting the read-through and store-behind operations. These transactions are : read-through-request (RR), read-through-result (RT), overflow (OV), store-behind-request (SB), and acknowledgement (AK). Each type of transaction is handled differently. Furthermore, the same type of transaction is handled differently depending on whether the transaction is going into or out of a storage level. A potential deadlock exists when different transactions share the same buffer and their paths form a closed loop. We have seen an example of such deadlock in the P1L3 model where SB transactions coming into a storage level and SB transactions going out of a storage level form a closed loop. Other potential deadlocks exists in the P1L3 model. This section is focused on developing deadlock-free buffer management algorithms.

Potential deadlocks exist beacause different transaction types share the same buffer and that the First Come First Serve (FCFS) strategy is used for allocating buffer slots. A simple strategy to avoid deadlock is not to allow buffer sharing among different transaction types. No path crossing can occur thus no loop can exist. Although this strategy is easy to implement, it does not make optimal use of the buf-

fer space. Another strategy to avoid deadlock is to allow
buffer sharing, but to make use of more sophisticated buffer
allocation algorithms. One such algorithm is discussed
below.

6.4.1   A Deadlock-free Buffer Allocation Algorithm

Two types of buffers are used at each storage level, the
IN buffers and the OUT buffers. Transactions coming into
the storage level use the IN buffers and transactions going
out of the storage level use the OUT buffers. Transaction
coming into a storage level from a higher storage level are
the RR, SB, and OV transactions. Transactions coming into a
storage level from a lower storage level are the RT and AK
transactions. Similarly, transactions going out of a sto-
rage level to the next lower storage level are the RR, SB,
and OV transactions. Transactions going out of a storage
level to a higher storage level are the RT and AK transac-
tions. Each component in a storage level has an IN buffer
and an OUT buffer. This is illustrated in Figure 6.11.

The general idea of this buffer allocation scheme is not
to allow the buffers to be completely filled. When the buf-
fers are filled up to a certain level, only those transac-
tions that can be processed to completion and resulting in
freeing up buffer slots are accepted. The precise algorithm
is as follows.

Figure 6.11   A Deadlock-free Buffer Scheme

1. The size of OUT is always greater than the size of IN.

2. Always maintain at least one empty slot in an IN buffer.

3. Buffer-full (BF) condition is raised when the number of transactions in IN plus the number of transactions in OUT is equal to the size of OUT.

4. If BF then do not accept any RR or SB into a storage level. Only process OV, RT, and AK transactions.

We now provide an informal argument to show that the scheme described above is indeed deadlock-free. First we have to show that the RR and SB transactions are not the only transactions in the system when all the buffer pairs have their BF conditions raised. Then we have to show that processing each of the OV, AK and RT transactions will free up some buffer slots thus lowering some BF conditions.

Suppose that all the BF conditions are raised. Examine the OUT buffers of the lowest storage level. Since the size of OUT is greater than that of IN, BF implies that there is at least one transaction in OUT. This transaction must be going out of the storage level to a higher storage level, hence cannot be a RR or a SB transaction.

Figure 6.12   Illustration of the Deadlock-free
Buffer Scheme

-214-

Consider a RT transaction at level i+1 (Figure 6.12).
(1) All upper storage level, level i and level i-1 can
receive this transaction since there is always one empty
slot in each IN buffer. The departure of the RT transaction
creates an empty slot in the OUT buffer of the sender (level
i+1). (2) Level i can now send a transaction to level i+1
which creates a slot in level i. The RT transaction can now
be serviced in level i. (3) Handling the RT transaction may
create an OV transaction in level i. Luckily there is a
buffer slot for the OV transaction in level i. (4) The OV
transaction can be sent to level i+1 because there is always
a free slot in the IN buffer at level i+1. (5) The OV tran-
saction will be serviced to completion in level i+1. Hence,
there is a free slot in level i as result of these opera-
tions. (6) Now a transaction from level i-1 can be sent to
level i. (7) The RT transaction can be handled in level i-1
which may create an OV transaction. (8) The OV transaction
can be sent to level i. (9) Finally, the OV transaction is
handled and terminated in level i. Thus, there is a free
buffer slot created in level i-1 as a result of processing
the RT transaction.

Handling an AK transaction may generate another AK to be
sent to the immediate upper storage level. The same argu-
ment for the RT transaction can be applied to show that a

buffer slot will be freed up as a result of handling the AK transaction.

It is clear from the above discussion that this buffer management scheme requires more complex protocols among storage levels and a complex priority scheme for the transactions. A key advantage of this scheme is that it makes efficient use of buffer space since different transactions with varying buffer space requirements can share a common buffer pool.

6.5   ANOTHER SIMULATION MODEL OF DSH-11 : THE P5L4 MODEL

A GPSS/360 simulation model of another DSH-11 configuration with five processors and four storage levels is developed. This model is referred to as the P5L4 model. This model revised the basic logic used in the P1L3 model to use a deadlock-free buffer management scheme and to accomodate four additional processors and an additional storage level. The simple scheme of using separate buffers for different transactions is used for the P5L4 model.

The first series of studies provides further insights to the operation of the store-behind algorithms. It also shows that level 4 storage may be too slow and its local bus may not have engough bandwidth to support the amount of data transfer activities at that level.

The second series of studies is aimed at obtaining a well-balanced system. The degree of parallelism in the lower storage levels are increased and the demand on the buses is lowered by reducing the block sizes. A well-balanced system is obtained which is then used as the basic system to study the effect of using projected 1985 technologies for DSH-11. Results of these studies and their analysis are presented in the following sections, after a brief introduction to the P5L4 model and its parameters.

6.5.1   The P5L4 Model and its Parameters

The structure of the P5L4 model is very similar to that of the P1L3 model. However, the basic component of the model is quite different. The basic component of the P5L4 model is a facility and a number of data buffers, one for each type of transaction comming into the storage level and going out of the storage level. Figure 6.13(a) illustrates the DSH-11 configuration that P5L4 is modelling, and Figure 6.13(b) illustrates the basic component of the model. A flow chart of the P5L4 model logic is presented in Appendic B. A listing of the P5L4 model is presented in Appendix C.

The parameters used in the P5L4 model are the same as those used in the P1L3 model with the following exceptions. (1) There are five processors, each with 10 degrees of mul-

Figure 6.13(a)   The P5L4 Configuration

Figure 6.13(b)   A Module in P5L4

DEGREE OF MULTIPROGRAMING OF A CPU = 10

SIZES OF DATA BUFFERS = 10

DIRECTORY SEARCH TIME = 200 NANOSEC.

READ/WRITE TIME OF A L(1) STORAGE DEVICE = 100 NANOSEC.

READ/WRITE TIME OF A L(2) DEVICE = 1000 NANOSEC.

READ/WRITE TIME OF A L(3) DEVICE = 10000 NANOSEC.

BUS SPEED = 10 MHZ

BUS WIDTH = 8 BYTES

SIZE OF A TRANSACTION WITHOUT DATA = 8 BYTES

BLOCK SIZE AT L(1) = 8 BYTES

BLOCK SIZE AT L(2) = 128 BYTES

BLOCK SIZE AT L(3) = 1024 BYTES

% READ REQUESTS = 70%

% WRITE REQUESTS = 30%

CONDITIONAL PROB. OF FINDING DATA IN A LEVEL

GIVEN THAT THE DATA IS NOT IN ANY UPPER LEVEL = P

Figure 6.14   Input Parameters to the P5L4 Model

tiprogramming (as opposed to 20 in the P1L3 model). (2)
There is a new storage level with 2 storage devices having
access times 10 times higher than those of the devices in
level 3. The parameters used in the P5L4 model are summar-
ized in Figure 6.14.

6.5.2   Preliminary Studies Using the P5L4 Model

A preliminary study using the P5L4 model is carried out
using several different locality levels and using the param-
eters listed in Figure 6.14. The simulated time is one mil-
lisecond (one million model time units). Results from these
studies are summarized in Figure 6.15. Figure 6.15(a) is a
table listing the throughput, mean response time, total
transaction wait time, total transaction execution time, and
'system utilization'. System utilization is defined as the
ratio of the product of the total number of transactions
completed and the mean response time to the product of the
simulated time and the maximum number of active requests
pending at all the processors. It indicates the percentage
time that DSH-11 is busy.

Figure 6.15(b) tabulates the utilizations of the buses
and the utilizations of typical storage devices at each sto-
rage level. The utilizations of all the memory request pro-
cessors and all the the storage level controllers are very

- 220 -

locality level	throughput (per ms.)	mean response time (ns)	total wait time (ms.)	total exec time (ms)	system utilization
.50	418	45805	17450	1690	.38
.60	600	35442	19910	1360	.43
.70	717	46664	32490	970	.67
.80	782	43570	32230	840	.68
.95	788	40148	31360	270	.63

(a)   Throughput, Response Time, etc.

(b)   Utilizations

P	gbus	lbus1	lbus2	lbus3	lbus4	L1	L2	L3	L4
.50	.92	.06	.30	.99	.94	.02	.11	.46	.99
.60	.91	.06	.31	.99	.94	.03	.11	.46	.99
.70	.91	.07	.32	.99	.94	.04	.13	.52	.88
.80	.88	.05	.26	.99	.94	.04	.10	.44	.92
.95	.84	.04	.21	.99	.95	.04	.06	.51	.90

Figure 6.15   Preliminary Results of P5L4 Model

Figure 6.16   Throughput Vs. Locality Level
(P5L4 Preliminary Results)

Figure 6.17 Mean Response Time Vs. Locality Level
(P5L4 Preliminary Results)

low. Figure 6.15(b) shows that the devices and the local bus at level 4 are satuarated for all locality levels. The local bus at level 3 is saturated but the devices at level 3 are only 50 percent utilized. Saturation of level 4 at low locality levels is due to the large number of read-through requests that has to be handled at that level. For example, at a locality level of .5, one-fouth of all read requests will be serviced by level 4. This creates a heavy burden on the level 4 devices and on its bus. At high locality levels, however, the number of read-through requests directed to level 4 is rather small. For example, at a locality level of .8, only .8 percent of all read requests are serviced by level 4. The saturation of level 4 at high locality levels is due to the store-behind requests. At high locality levels, the number of write requests are much higher, thus there is a high demand on level 4 to service the corresponding store-behind requests. It seems that level 3 storage devices have the capacity to handle the read-through and store-behind requests at all locality levels. However, the local bus at level 3 is saturated at all locality levels. The bus saturation at level 3 is possibly due to the store-behind requests. We shall discuss ways to eliminate these performance bottlenecks in a later section.

Throughput data presented in Figure 6.15(a) is plotted as a graph in Figure 6.16. Figure 6.16 shows that throughput rises sharply starting from the .5 locality level, then its follows a much slower rate of increase after the .7 locality level. At a low locality level, throughput is low since a large proportion of the read requests has to go to the slower storage devices. As the locality level increases, a large proportion of requests can be handled by the higher storage levels. The higher storage levels are not heavily utilized, thus they can complete the requests quickly. The faster transactions can be completed, the faster new transactions can arrive since the model is a closed one. This explains the sharp increase in throughput between .5 and .7 locality levels.

When the locality level is high, the rate of store-behind transactions coming into the model becomes high. Since there is a fixed proportion of reads and writes in the request stream, the throughput at high locality levels becomes limited by how fast the store-behind requests can be serviced. Thus, at high locality levels, increasing the locality level further will not produce a dramatic increase in throughput.

The plot of mean response time in Figure 6.17 provides further insights to the store-behind operations. Figure

6.17 shows that there is a discontinuity in the mean response time curve between .6 and .7 locality levels. The discontinuity may be explained as follows. As the locality level increases, the rate of store-behind transactions coming into the model also increases. Read operations become a less dominant factor of system performance. There is a pipeline of buffer slots for store-behind transactions. A write request is completed as soon as it has completed a write to its data cache and has placed a store-behind transaction in the store-behind pipeline. The store-behind transaction flows along the pipeline until it is serviced and terminated by a level 4 storage device. If a write request cannot find a slot in the store-behind pipeline, it has to wait. At high locality levels, the store-behind pipeline is full, hence, write operations tend to incure a larger wait time waiting for pipeline slots. It seems that the store-behind pipeline is full after the .7 locality level, causing long wait times by transactions, hence larger mean response times for all locality levels higher than .7. The store-behind pipeline is not full for all locality levels below .7. Thus transactions have smaller mean response time in these cases. This expains the difference in behavior of the two mean response time curves.

The data seems to support this theory. Outputs from the simulation runs shows that the pipeline is full for all locality levels greater than and equal to .7. The total transaction time column in Figure 6.15(a) shows that there is a dramatic increase in the transaction wait time for all cases with locality level above .7. The figure also shows that the transaction wait time is a dominant portion of the total transaction time. Since mean response time is the ratio of total transaction time to total number of completed transactions, the more than doubling of the wait time going from .6 to .7 locality level is the key factor in the sudden increase in mean response time. The sudden increase in wait time is due to the fact that the pipeline is just filled up, new transactions begin to experience prolonged delays. These preliminary studies have provided valuable insights to the dynamics of the store-behind operation. We now have gained enough understanding of the model to tune it for better performance.

6.5.3 Tuning the P5L4 Model

Our objective in this next series of studies is to try to obtain a well-balanced system. From the preliminary studies, we know that to reduce mean response time we have to increase the efficiency of the store-behind pipeline. One approach to increase the efficiency of the pipeline is to

increase the parallelism of the lower storage levels, so
that the service times of the stages of the pipeline are
better balanced. The preliminary studies also reveal that
our initial choice of block sizes may not be appropriate for
the system.

The approach that is taken to obtain a well-balanced sys-
tem is as follows. The locality level is fixed at .9. Then
the degree of parallelism in level 3 is increased by a fac-
tor of 5 and that of level 4 is increased by a factor of 10.
This is accomplished by decreasing the effective service
times of the devices at these levels appropriately.
Finally, the model is run for several choices of block sizes
for the storage levels. The simulated time for these runs
are much longer than in the preliminary studies to ensure
that steady state behavior is observed. The results
obtained are summarized in Figure 6.18.

The first study uses the same block sizes as those used
in the preliminary studies. The results of this study are
summarized in column one which clearly shows that level 4 is
the bottleneck causing the very low throughput and high mean
response time. Note that the devices are not saturated.
This indicates that the block sizes are too large thus tie-
ing up the bus at level 4 during data transfer.

locality level = .90			
block sizes (bytes)	(8,128,1024)	(8,64,512)	(8,64,256)
throughput (per ms)	176	458	721
MRESP TIME (ns)	258580	96260	60940
gbus util.	.62	.67	.77
lbus1 util.	.02	.04	.07
lbus2 "	.10	.15	.26
lbus3 "	.67	.71	.84
lbus4 "	1.00	.99	.99
L1 "	.01	.04	.06
L2 "	.03	.07	.11
L3 "	.28	.27	.28
L4 "	.17	.40	.83

Figure 6.18 Tuning the P5L4 Model

In the next study, the size of data transfer between level 2 and level 3 and that between level 3 and level 4 are reduced by one half. The results of this study are summarized in column 2. The bus at level 4 is still a bottleneck. There is significant improvement in the utilizations of level 4 storage devices.

Next, the size of data transfer between level 3 and level 4 is halved. This produces a fairly well-balanced system. The results are summarized in column 3. A throughput of .7 million operations per second with mean response time of 60 microseconds is obtained. The utilizations across storage levels are well-balanced comparatively.

6.5.4 Comparing the Performance of DSH-11 using 1979 and 1985 Technologies

The well-balanced system obtained from the previous studies will be used as a basis for comparing the performance of DSH-11 under 1979 and 1985 technology assumptions. The parameters used in the 1979 case are exactly those used in the well-balanced system of the previous studies. For the 1985 case, we will use a bus speed that is 5 times faster than that used in the 1979 case. In general, the speeds of the storage devices in the 1985 case will be faster. We estimate that the level 1 storage devices will be twice as fast in 1985 as in 1979. All other devices are estimated to

be 10 times faster in 1985 than in 1979. Lastly, we expect 1985 to produce better associative processors for directory searching thus the directory search time will be reduced by one half in 1985. These estimates will be incorproated in the parameters for the 1985 case.

The model using 1979 technology assumptions is run for 4 different request streams with different proportions of reads and writes. The model using 1985 technology assumptions is then run with the same 4 different request streams. The locality level is fixed at .9 in both cases. The results are summarized in Figure 6.19.

The throughputs for the two cases are plotted on the same graph in Figure 6.20. In general, for both cases, throughput increases as the proportion of read requests increases. It can be inferred from the results that the throughput of DSH-11 using 1985 technology is between 5 to 10 times better than using 1979 technology. For a request stream with 70 percent read requests and 30 percent write requests, DSH-11 using 1979 technology can support a throughput of .7 million requests per second with a mean response time of 60 microseconds. For the same mix of requests, DSH-11 using 1985 technology can support a throughput of 4 million requests per second with a mean response time of 10 microseconds.

% read	TRUPT (per ms)	MRESP (ns)	gbus U.	lbus1 U.	lbus2 U.	lbus3 U.	lbus4 U.	L1 U.	L2 U.	L3 U.	L4 U.
.50	450	97580	.76	.06	.25	.84	.99	.04	.10	.25	.67
.70	721	60940	.77	.07	.26	.84	.99	.06	.11	.28	.65
.80	1559	26790	.85	.10	.34	.91	.97	.11	.18	.34	.71
.90	3239	13440	.90	.14	.42	.93	.97	.23	.28	.35	.83

(a)   1979 Technology

(b)   1985 Technology

%read	TRUPT (per ms)	MRESP (ns)	gbus U.	lbus1 U.	lbus2 U.	lbus3 U.	lbus4 U.	L1 U.	L2 U.	L3 U.	L4 U.
.50	2298	19780	.76	.06	.24	.82	.99	.13	.05	.27	.35
.70	4320	9940	.79	.07	.28	.86	.98	.20	.06	.28	.34
.80	15040	2640	.96	.15	.47	.97	.92	.64	.14	.38	.28
.90	22760	1760	.95	.16	.47	.96	.91	.99	.17	.27	.34

Figure 6.19   Comparing Performance of P5L4
Using Different Technologies

Figure 6.20   Throughput Vs. % Read
(Comparative Performace)

6.6 SUMMARY

Two simulation models of the DSH-11 storage hierarchy
system are developed and used to understand the performance
characteristics of DSH-11 and its algorithms. The first
model is developed for a DSH-11 configuration with one pro-
cessor and three storage levels. Results from this model
uncovers an unsuspected deadlock potential in the DSH-11
buffer management scheme. This leads to the development of
new buffer management schemes for DSH-11. A second model is
developed for a DSH-11 configuration with five processors
and four storage levels. This model also makes use of a
deadlock-free buffer management scheme. Results from this
model provides much insights to the performance implications
of the read-through and store-behind algorithms. After suf-
ficient understanding of the model is obtained, the model is
tuned for better performance. The resulting system is then
used as a basis for comparing the performance implication of
using different technology for DSH-11.

Results from these simulation studies not only provide
valuable insights to the important dynamic behavior of
store-behind and read-through algorithms, they also provide
assurance that the DSH-11 is capable of supporting the
memory requirements of the INFOPLEX functional hierarchy.

Chapter VII

DISCUSSIONS AND CONCLUSIONS

7.1   INTRODUCTION

Database management is a major component of computer
usage.   Adapting conventional computer architectures to sup-
port database management functions has several disadvan-
tages.   Two major disadvantages have been recognized for
some time.   These are :   (1) processor power limitation of
the conventional computer, and (2) the 'access gap' that
exists between main memory and secondary storage devices of
conventional computers.

Various approaches have been proposed to develop special-
ized architectures for database management.   These
approaches have been discussed in Chapter 1.   One of these
approaches is the INFOPLEX data base computer effort.   INFO-
PLEX eliminates the processor power limitation by using mul-
tiple specialized functional processors and makes use of a
generalized storage hierarchy specifically designed for man-
aging very large databases.   A major obstacle to realize
effective storage hierarchy systems has been the lack of
understanding of these systems and their algorithms.   Previ-

ous studies of storage hierarchy systems have been focused on systems with two or three storage levels, and usually for program storage. This thesis is focused on the study of generalized storage hierarchy systems for data storage, referred to as data storage hierarchy systems. Theories and models of data storage hierarchy systems are developed. Formal definitions of data management algorithms for data storage hierarchy systems are defined. Important properties of data storage hierarchy systems have been analyzed in detail to provide valuable insight for design of practical data storage hierarchy systems. Designs for the INFOPLEX data storage hierarchy are developed and protocols for realizing the read and write operations are specified. Finally, simulation models for these designs are developed to assess the feasibility of these designs for supporting the very high transaction rates of INFOPLEX and to obtain better understanding of the read-through and store-behind operations from a practical point of view.

7.2   SUMMARY OF THESIS

Chapter 1 of the thesis provides a framework for understanding the rationale behind various approaches to develop specialized machines for data management. Major contributions of this thesis are also listed.

The background and motivation for this research is the
INFOPLEX data base computer project. Concepts of the INFO-
PLEX data base computer are presented in Chapter 2. An
example functional hierarchy and an example storage hier-
archy for INFOPLEX are used to illustrate some of these con-
cepts.

A preliminary design of the INFOPLEX data storage hier-
archy is proposed in Chapter 3. Design objectives and the
structure of the system are presented. Further design
issues that need to be resolved are also identified.

Formal modelling and analysis of data storage hierarchy
systems are presented in Chapter 4. It contains formal
proofs of the multi-level inclusion (MLI), the multi-level
overflow inclusion (MLOI), and multi-level paging anomaly
(MLPA) properties of data storage hierarchy systems.

The preliminary design of the INFOPLEX data storage hier-
archy system presented in Chapter 2 is simplified in Chapter
5. This simplified design is then used to develop protocols
for supporting the read and write operations. Specifica-
tions for these protocols are presented in Chapter 5.

A simulation model of the INFOPLEX data storage hierarchy
system with one functional processor and three storage lev-
els is developed in Chapter 6. Results from this simulation

model are analyzed. Insights from these analysis lead to some design changes. Another simulation model of the INFO-PLEX data storage hierarchy is then developed. This model incorporates five functional processors and four storage levels. Results from this model are analyzed and reveal further interesting properties of the design and of the data management algorithms. The impacts of using projected 1985 technology are also assessed.

7.3 DIRECTIONS FOR FURTHER RESEARCH

This thesis has provided a theoretic framework for formal analysis of data storage hierarchy systems. Using this framework, several important properties of data storage hierarchy systems that have performance and reliability implications are studied in detail. This work also opens up many areas for further investigation. Do the properties of data storage hierarchy systems proved in this thesis hold for systems using any stack algorithm (Mattson et. al., 1970)? What are the effects of introducing the two-level store-behind algorithm into the system? Are the conditions for avoiding the multi-level paging anomaly (MLPA) also necessary conditions, i.e., what are the causes of MLPA? These are interesting and important questions. The formal basis developed in this thesis will be a major steping stone toward resolving these open questions.

The preliminary design of the INFOPLEX data storage hierarchy can be used to develop algorithms that improve the efficiency and reliability of the data storage hierarchy. The automatic data repair algorithms introduced in Chapter 3 are particularly interesting and promising. A number of other design issues are discussed but left as open issues. For example, the multi-cache consistency problem by itself is a subject of great importance but still quite lacking of theoretic basis for analysis.

The simulation results reveal several important properties of the design and of the algorithms that are quite unexpected. The deadlock potential in the initial design can be corrected quite easily. The fact that the store-behind operation can be a system bottleneck is not anticipated before. It has been argued in the past that store-behind operations take place during system slack periods thus do not adversly impact system performance. A number of alternative schemes can be developed to improve the efficiency of the store-behind operation. May be we can separate the read only data from the read/write data and keep the read/write data higher up in the data storage hierarchy system. This would reduce the store-behind traffic to lower storage levels. The implications of this type of data management strategy remain uncharted.

Some of these issues are currently being addressed as
part of the INFOPLEX research effort (Abraham, 1979).

REFERENCES

(Abe, 1977) : Abe, Y., 'A Japanese On-line Banking System',
Datamation, September 1977, 89-97.

(Abraham, 1979): Abraham, M. J., ' Properties of Reference
Algorithms for Multi-level Storage Hierarchies', Masters
Thesis, M.I.T. Sloan School of Management, Cambridge,
Mass.,June 1979.

(Ahearn et. al., 1972) : Ahearn, G.P., Dishon, Y., and
Snively, R.N., 'Design Innovations of the IBM 3830 and
2835 Storage Control Units', IBM Journal of Research and
Development 16, 1 (January, 1972), 11-18.

(ANSI, 1975) : ANSI, 'Interim Report of ANSI/X3/SPARC group
on Database Management Systems', ANSI, February, 1975.

(Armenti et. al., 1970) : Armenti, A., Galley, S.,
Goldberg, R., Nolan, J., and Scholl, A., 'LISTAR -
Lincoln Information Storage and Associatve Retrieval
System', AFIP Conference Proceedings, 36, (1970),
313-322.

(Arora and Gallo, 1971) : Arora, S.R., and Gallo, A.,
'Optimal Sizing Loading and Reloading in a Multi-level
Memory Hierarchy System', Spring Joint Computer
Conference, 1971, 337-344.

(Bachman, 1975) : Bachman, C., 'Trends in Database
Management - 1975', AFIP Conference Proceedings, 44,
(1975), 569-576.

(Banerjee et. al., 1978) : Banerjee, J., Hsiao, D.K., and
Baum, R.I., 'Concepts and Capabilities of a Database
Computer', ACM Trans. on Database Systems, 3, 4
(December, 1978), 347-384.

(Banerjee et. al., 1979) : Banerjee, J., Hsiao, D.K., and
Kannan, K., 'DBC - A Database Computer for Very Large
Databases', IEEE Trans. on Computers, C-28, 6 (June
1979), 414-429.

(Belady, 1966) :   Belady, L.A., 'A Study of Replacement
    Algorithms for a Virtual-storage Computer', IBM Systems
    Journal, 5, 2, (1966), 78-101.

(Belady et. al., 1969) :   Belady, L.A., Nelson, R.A., and
    Shedler, G.S., 'An Anomaly in Space-time Characteristics
    of Certain Programs Running in a Paging Machine', Comm.
    ACM, 12, 6, (June, 1969), 349-353.

(Bensoussan et. al., 1969):   Bensoussan, A., Clingen, C.T.,
    and Daley, R.C., 'The MULTICS Virtual Memory', Second
    Symposium on Operating Systems Principles, Princeton
    University, October 1969, 30-42.

(Canaday et. al., 1974) :   Canaday, R.H., Harrison, R.D.,
    Ivie, E.L., Ryder, J.L., and Wehr, L.A., 'A Back-end
    Computer for Database Management', Comm. ACM, 17,10
    (October 1974), 575-584.

(Censier and Feautrier, 1978) :   Censier, L.M., and
    Feautrier, P., 'A New Solution to Coherence Problems in
    Multicache Systems', IEEE Trans. on Computers, C-27, 12
    (December, 1978), 1112-1118.

(Chen, 1973) :   Chen, P.P., 'Optimal File Allocation in
    Multi-level Storage Systems', Proceedings National
    Computer Conference, June 1973.

(Codasyl, 1971) :   Codasyl, 'Data Base Task Group, April
    1971 Report', ACM, New York, 1971.

(Codd, 1970) :   Codd, E.F., 'A Relational Model of Data for
    Large Shared Data Banks', Comm. ACM, 13, 6 (June 1970),
    377-387.

(Codd, 1974) :   Codd, E.F., 'Recent Investigations in
    Relational Database Systems', Information Processing 71,
    North Holland Publishing Company, 1974.

(Computerworld, 1976) :   Computerworld, 'Reliability Seen
    Key to TWA Reservations System', Computerworld, September
    6, 1976, 22.

(Conti, 1969) :   Conti, C.J., 'Concepts for Buffer Storage',
    IEEE Computer Group News, March 1969, 6-13.

(Considine and Weis, 1969):   Considine, J.P., and Weis,
    A.H., 'Establishment and Maintenance of a Storage
    Hierarchy for an Online Database Under TSS/360', Fall
    Joint Computer Conference, 35 (1969), 433-440.

(Copeland et. al., 1973) : Copeland, G.P., Lipovski, G.J., and Su, S.Y.W., 'The Architecture of CASSM: A Cellular System for Non-numeric Processing', Proceedings of First Annual Symposium on Computer Architecture, December, 1973, 121-128.

(Datamation, 1978) : Datamation, December, 1978, 230.

(Denning, 1970) : Denning, P.J., 'Virtual Memory', ACM Computing Surveys, 2, 3 (September 1970), 153-190.

(Dennis et. al., 1978) : Dennis, J.B., Fuller, S.H., Ackerman, W.B., Swan, R.J., and Weng, K., 'Research Directions in Computer Architecture', M.I.T. Laboratory for Computer Sciences, LCS-TM-114, September, 1978.

(Dijkstra, 1968) : Dijkstra, E.W., 'The Structure of T.H.E. Multiprogramming System', Comm. ACM, 11, 5 (May 1968).

(Donovan and Jacoby, 1975) : Donovan, J.J., and Jacoby, H.D., 'A Hierarchical Approach to Information System Design', CISR-5, Sloan School of Management, MIT, January 1975.

(Easton, 1978): Easton, M.C., 'Model for Database Reference Strings Based on Behavior of Reference Clusters', IBM Journal of Research and Development, 22, 2 (March, 1978), 197-202.

(Folinus et. al., 1974) : Folinus, J.J., Madnick, S.E., and Schutzman, H., 'Virtual Information in Database Systems', Working Paper CISR-3, Sloan School of Management, MIT, July 1974.

(Franaszek and Bennett, 1978) : Franaszek, P.A., and Bennett, B.T., 'Adaptive Variation of the Transfer Unit in a Storage Hierarchy', IBM Journal of Research and Development, 22, 4, (July, 1978), 405-412.

(Franklin et. al., 1978) : Franklin, M.A., Graham, G.S., and Gupta, R.K., 'Anomalies with Variable Partition Paging Algorithms', Comm. ACM, 21, 3, (March, 1978), 232-236.

(Goldberg, 1974) : Goldberg, R.P., 'The Double Paging Anomaly', Proceedings National Computer Conference, 1974, 195-199.

(Greenberg and Webber, 1975) : Greenberg, B.S., and Webber, S.H., 'MULTICS Multilevel Paging Hierarchy', IEEE INTERCON, 1975.

(Haagens, 1978) :   Haagens, R.B., 'A Bus Structure for
    Multi-Microprocessing', Masters Thesis, M.I.T. Department
    of Electrical Engineering, Cambridge, Mass., January,
    1978.

(Hakozaki et. al., 1977) :   Hakozaki, K., Makino, T.,
    Mizuma, M., Umemura, M., and Hiyoshi, S., 'A Conceptual
    Design of a Generalized Database Subsystem', Proc. Very
    Large Data Bases, 1977, 246-253.

(Hatfield, 1972) :   Hatfield, D.J., 'Experiments on Page
    Size, Program Access Patterns, and Virtual Memory
    Performance', IBM Journal of Research and Development,
    16, 1 (January 1972), 58-66.

(Hatfield and Gerald, 1971) :   Hatfield, D.J., and Gerald,
    J., 'Program Restructuring for Virtual Memory', IBM
    Systems Journal, 10, 3, (1971), 168-192.

(Healy et. al., 1972) :   Healy, L.D., Doty, K.L., and
    Lipovski, G.J., 'The Architecture of a Context Addressed
    Segment Sequential Storage', AFIPS Conference
    Proceedings, 41, (1972), 691-701.

(Hoagland, 1979) :   Hoagland, A.S., 'Storage Technology:
    Capabilities and Limitations', Spring COMPCON, 1979,
    60-64.

(Hsiao and Kannan, 1976) :   Hsiao, D.K., and Kannan, K.,
    'The Architecture of a Database Computer - Part II: The
    Design of Structure Memory and its Related Processors',
    OSU-CISRC-TR-76-e, Ohio State University, December 1976.

(Huff and Madnick, 1978) :   Huff, S.L., and Madnick, S.E.,
    'An Approach to Constructing Functional Requirement
    Statements for System Architectural Design', M.I.T. Sloan
    School of Management, C.I.S.R. Internal Report No.
    P010-7806-06, (June 1978).

(Johnson, 1975) :   Johnson, C., 'IBM 3850 - Mass Storage
    System', AFIPS Conference Proceedings, 44, (1975),
    509-514.

(Johnson J, 1975) :   Johnson, J., 'Program Restructuring for
    Virtual Memory Systems', MIT Project MAC, TR-148, March,
    1975.

(Katsuki et. al., 1978) : Katsuki, D., Elsam, E.S., Mann, W.F., Roberts, E.S., Robinson, J.G., Skowronski, F.S., and Wolf, E.W., 'Pluribus - An Operational Fault-Tolerant Multiprocessor', Proceedings of the IEEE, 66, 10 (October 1978), 1146-1159.

(Lam and Madnick, 1979) : Lam, C.Y., and Madnick, S.E., 'INFOPLEX Data Base Computer Architecture - Concepts and Directions', MIT Sloan School Working Paper No. 1046-79 (also as CISR Working Paper No. 41), 1979.

(Lang et. al., 1977) : Lang, T., Nahouraii, E. Kasuga, K. and Fernadez, E.B., 'An Architectural Extension for a Large Database System Incorporating a Processor for Disk Search', Proc. Very Large Data Bases, 1977, 204-210.

(Langdon, 1978) : Langdon G.G. Jr., 'A Note on Associative Processing for Data Management', ACM Trans. on Database Systems, 3, 2 (June 1978), 148-158.

(Lin et. al., 1976) : Lin, S.C., Smith, D.C.P., and Smith, J.M. 'The Design of a Rotating Associative Memory for Relational Database Applications'. ACM Trans. on Database Systems, 1, 1 (March 1976), 53-75.

(Lum et. al., 1975) : Lum, V.Y., Senko, M.E., Wang, C.P., and Ling, H., 'A Cost Oriented Algorithm for Data Set Allocation in Storage Hierarchies', Comm. ACM, 18, 6, (June, 1975), 318-322.

(Madnick, 1970) : Madnick, S.E., 'Design Strategies for File Systems', MIT Project MAC Report No. TR-78, October 1970.

(Madnick, 1973) : Madnick, S.E., 'Storage Hierarchy Systems', MIT Project MAC Report No. TR-105, 1973.

(Madnick, 1975a) : Madnick, S.E., 'Design of a General Hierarchical Storage System', IEEE INTERCON Proceedings, 1975, 1-7.

(Madnick, 1975b) : Madnick, S.E., 'INFOPLEX - Hierarchical Decomposition of a Large Information Management System Using a Microprocessor Complex', Proceedings National Computer Conference, 44, (May 1975), 581-587.

(Madnick, 1977) : Madnick, S.E., 'Trends in Computers and Computing: The Information Utility', Science, 195, 4283 (1973), 1191-1199.

(Madnick, 1979): Madnick, S.E., 'The INFOPLEX Database
    Computer: Concepts and Directions', Proceedings IEEE
    Computer Conference, February 26, 1979, 168-176.

(Madnick and Alsop, 1969) : Madnick, S.E., and Alsop, J.
    'A Modular Approach to File System Design', Spring Joint
    Computer Conference Proceedings, 34 (May 1969), 1-14.

(Madnick and Donovan, 1974) : Madnick, S.E., and Donovan,
    J.J., Operating Systems, McGraw-Hill, New York, 1974.

(Marill and Stern, 1975) : Marill, T., and Stern, D., 'The
    Datacomputer - a Network Data Utility', AFIPS Conference
    Proceedings, 44 (975), 389-395.

(Martin, 1975) : Martin, J., Computer Data Base
    Organization, Prentice-Hall, New York, 1975.

(Mattson, 1971) : Mattson, R.L., 'Evaluation of Multilevel
    Memories', IEEE Transactions on Magnetics, Vol. MAG-7,
    No. 4 (DEcember, 1971), 814-819.

(Mattson et. al., 1970) : Mattson, R.L., Gecsei, J., Slutz,
    D.R., and Traiger, I.L., 'Evaluation Techniques for
    Storage Hierarchies', IBM Systems Journal, 9, 2 (1970),
    78-117.

(McCabe, 1978): McCabe, E.J., 'Locality in Logical Database
    Systems: A Framework for Analysis', Masters Thesis,
    M.I.T. Sloan School of Management, Cambridge, Mass., July
    1978.

(Meade, 1970): Meade, R.M., 'On Memory System Design',
    AFIPS Conference Proceedings, 37 (1970), 33-43.

(Mohan, 1978) : Mohan, C., 'An Overview of Recent Data Base
    Research', DATABASE, Fall 1978, 3-24.

(Mueller, 1976) : Mueller, G., Computer, 9, 12 (December
    1976), 100.

(Ozkarahan et. al., 1975) : Ozkarahan, E.A., Schuster,
    S.A., and Smith, K.C., 'RAP - Associative Processor for
    Data Base Management', AFIPS Conference Proceedings, 44,
    (1975), 379-388.

(Ozkarahan et. al., 1977) : Ozkarahan, E.A., Schuster,
    S.A., and Sevcik, K.C., 'Performance Evaluation of a
    Relational Associative Processor', ACM Trans. on Database
    Systems, 2, 2 (June, 1977), 175-195.

(Parnas, 1976) :   Parnas, D.L., 'On The Design and
    Development of Program Families', IEEE Transactions on
    Software Engineering, SE-2-1, March 1976.

(Pattee, 1973) :   Pattee, H.H., Hierarch Theory: The
    Challenge of Complex Systems, George Brazillier, New
    York, 1973.

(Ramamoothy and Chandy, 1970) :   Ramamoorthy, C.V., and
    Chandy, K.M., 'Optimization of Memory Hierarchies in
    Multiprogrammed Systems', Journal of the ACM, July 1970.

(Robidoux, 1979):   Robidoux, S.L., 'A Closer Look at
    Database Access Patterns', Masters Thesis, M.I.T. Sloan
    School of Management, Cambridge, Mass., June, 1979.

(Rodriguez-Rosell, 1976):   Rodriguez-Rosell, J., 'Empirical
    Data Reference Behavior in Data Base Systems', Computer,
    November, 1976, 9-13.

(Scherr, 1973) :   Scherr, A.L., 'Functional Structure of IBM
    Virtual Storage Operating Systems Part II : OS/VS2-2
    Concepts and Philosophies', IBM Systems Journal, 12, 4
    (1973), 382-400.

(Schuster, 1978) :   Schuster, S.A., 'Data Base Machines',
    Proceedings of the Conference on Computing in the 1980's,
    1978, 125-131.

(Schuster et. al., 1976) :   Schuster, S.A., Ozkarahan, E.A.,
    and Smith, K.C., 'A Virtual Memory System for a
    Relational Associative Processor', Proceedings National
    Computer Conference, 1976, 855-862.

(Schuster et. al., 1979) :   Schuster, S.A., Nguyen, H.B.,
    Ozkarahan, E.A., and Smith, K.C., 'RAP.2 - An Associative
    Processor for Databases and Its Applications', IEEE
    Trans. on Computers, C-28, 6 (June 1979), 446-458.

(Senko, 1976) :   Senko, M.E., 'DIAM II: The Binary
    Infological Level and its Database Language - FORAL',
    Proceedings of the ACM Conference on Data. March 1976,
    1-21.

(Simonson and Alsbrooks, 1975) :   Simonson, W.E., and
    Alsbrooks, W.T., 'A DBMS for the U.S. Bureau of the
    Census', Proc. Very Large Data Bases, 1975, 496-497.

(Smith, 1978a) :   Smith, A.J., 'Directions for Memory
    Hierarchies and their Components: Research and
    Development', IEEE Proceedings COMPSAC, 1978, Chicago,
    704-709.

(Smith, 1978b):   Smith, A.J., 'Sequentiality and Prefetching
    in Data Base Systems', ACM Trans. on Database Systems,
    September, 1978.

(Soltis and Hoffman, 1979) :   Soltis, F.G., and Hoffman,
    R.L., 'Design Considerations for the IBM System/38',
    Spring COMPCON, 1979, 132-137.

(Su, 1977) :   Su, S.Y.W., 'Associative Programming in CASSM
    and its Applications', Proc. Very Large Data Bases, 1977,
    213-228.

(Su and Lipovski, 1975) :   Su, S.Y., and Lipovski, G.J.,
    'CASSM: A Cellular System for Very Large Databases',
    Proc. Very Large Data Bases, September 1975, 456-472.

(Su et. al., 1979) :   Su, S.Y.W., Nguyen, L.H., Emam, A.,
    and Lipovski, G.J., 'The Architectural Features and
    Implementation Techniques of the Multicell CASSM', IEEE
    Trans. on Computers, C-28, 6 (June 1979), 430-445.

(Tang,1976) :   Tang, C.K., 'Cache System Design in the
    Tightly Coupled Multiprocessor System', Proceedings
    National Computer Conference, 1976, 749-753.

(Toh et. al., 1977) :   Toh, T., Kawazu, S., and Suzuki, K.,
    'Multi-Level Structures of the DBTG Data Model for an
    Achievement of the Physical Independence', Proc. Very
    Large Data Bases, 1977, 403-414.

(Yeh et. al., 1977) :   Yeh, R.T., and Baker, J.W., 'Toward a
    Design Methodology for DBMS: A Software Engineering
    Approach', Proc. Very Large Data Bases, 1977, 16-27.

Appendix A

LISTING OF THE P1L3 MODEL

```
//LAM1 JOB LAM,MPROFILE='RETURN',
// PROFILE='HIGH',
// TIME=2
//*PASSWORD
//GPSS PROC
//C    EXEC  PGM=DAG01,TIME=2
//STEPLIB DD DSN=POTLUCK.LIBRARY.GPSS.LOAD,DISP=SHR
//DOUTPUT DD SYSOUT=PROFILE=RETURN,DCB=BLKSIZE=931
//DINTERO DD UNIT=SCRATCH,SPACE=(CYL,(1,1)),DCB=BLKSIZE=1880
//DSYMTAB DD UNIT=SCRATCH,SPACE=(CYL,(1,1)),DCB=BLKSIZE=7112
//DREPTGEN DD UNIT=SCRATCH,SPACE=(CYL,(1,1)),DCB=BLKSIZE=800
//DINTWORK DD UNIT=SCRATCH,SPACE=(CYL,(1,1)),DCB=BLKSIZE=2680
// PEND
//STEP1 EXEC  GPSS,PARM=C
//DINPUT1  DD *
****************************************************************
*                                                              *
*       TRANSACTION PARAMETER USAGE                            *
*                                                              *
*       P1      CPU IDENTIFIER                                 *
*       P2      ARRIVAL TIME                                   *
*       P3      COMPLETION TIME                                *
*       P4      TOTAL EXECUTION TIME                           *
*       P5      TOTAL ELAPSED TIME                             *
*       P6      TOTAL WAIT TIME                                *
*       P7      SERVICE TIME                                   *
*       P11     DUMMY                                          *
*                                                              *
****************************************************************
*
  NTXN  EQU        01,X           NUMBER OF TXNS PROCESSED
  SUMX  EQU        02,X           EXECUTION TIME OF ALL TXNS
  SUMQ  EQU        03,X           QUEUE TIME OF ALL TXNS
  SUMW  EQU        04,X           ELAPSED TIME OF ALL TXNS
*
  MAXMP EQU        05,X           DEGREE OF CPU MULTIPLROGRAMMING
  NREAD EQU        06,X           PARTS IN THOUSAND OF READ TXNS
  NWRIT EQU        07,X           PARTS IN THOUSAND OF WRITE TXNS
*
  PIN1  EQU        08,X           PROB OF FINDING READ DATA IN L(1)
  PIN2  EQU        09,X           PROB OF FINDING READ DATA IN L(2)
  PIN3  EQU        10,X           PROB OF FINDING READ DATA IN L(3)
*
  POV1  EQU        11,X           PROB OF OVERFLOW FROM L(1)
  POV2  EQU        12,X           PROB OF OVERFLOW FROM L(2)
  POV3  EQU        13,X           PROB OF OVERFLOW FROM L(3)
*
****************************************************************
*       MAXIMUM DATA QUEUE LENGTHS                            *
****************************************************************
*
  DXM11 EQU        14,X
  DYM11 EQU        15,X
  DXM12 EQU        16,X
  DYM12 EQU        17,X
```

```
 DXM13 EQU          18,X
 DYM13 EQU          19,X
*
 DXM21 EQU          20,X
 DYM21 EQU          21,X
 DXM22 EQU          22,X
 DYM22 EQU          23,X
*
 DXM31 EQU          24,X
 DYM31 EQU          25,X
 DXM32 EQU          26,X
 DYM32 EQU          27,X
*
 KXM1  EQU          28,X
 KYM1  EQU          29,X
*
 KXM2  EQU          30,X
 KYM2  EQU          31,X
*
 KXM3  EQU          32,X
 KYM3  EQU          33,X
*
 RXM2  EQU          34,X
 RYM2  EQU          35,X
*
 RXM3  EQU          36,X
 RYM3  EQU          37,X
*
***********************************************************************
*      CURRENT LENGTHS OF DATA QUEUES                                 *
***********************************************************************
*
 DXL11 EQU          38,X
 DYL11 EQU          39,X
 DXL12 EQU          40,X
 DYL12 EQU          41,X
 DXL13 EQU          42,X
 DYL13 EQU          43,X
*
 DXL21 EQU          44,X
 DYL21 EQU          45,X
 DXL22 EQU          46,X
 DYL22 EQU          47,X
*
 DXL31 EQU          48,X
 DYL31 EQU          49,X
 DXL32 EQU          50,X
 DYL32 EQU          51,X
*
 KXL1  EQU          52,X
 KYL1  EQU          53,X
*
 KXL2  EQU          54,X
 KYL2  EQU          55,X
*
```

```
KXL3  EQU       56,X
KYL3  EQU       57,X

RXL2  EQU       58,X
RYL2  EQU       59,X
*
RXL3  EQU       60,X
RYL3  EQU       61,X
*

*******************************************************************
* SERVICE TIMES OF DEVICES, BUSES, PROCESSORS                     *
*******************************************************************

DEX11 EQU       62,X         L(1) STORAGE SERVICE TIME
DEX12 EQU       63,X
DEX13 EQU       64,X
DEX21 EQU       65,X         L(2) STORAGE SERVICE TIMES
DEX22 EQU       66,X
DEX31 EQU       67,X         L(3) STORAGE SERVICE TIMES
DEX32 EQU       68,X
BEXD1 EQU       69,X         BUS SERV TIME L(1)
BEXD2 EQU       70,X         BUS SERV. TIME L(2)
BXD3  EQU       71,X         BUS SERV. TIME L(3)
BEXM  EQU       72,X         BUS SERV. TIME FOR MSG
KEX   EQU       73,X         LEVEL CONTROLLER (K) SERVICE TIME
REX   EQU       74,X         MEMORY REQUEST PROCESSOR (R) SERVICE TIME
TIMER EQU       75,X

*******************************************************************
*                                                                 *
* VARAIBLE DEFINITIONS                                            *
*                                                                 *
*******************************************************************

MRESP FVARIABLE  (X$SUMW/X$NTXN)              MEAN RESPONSE TIME
TXNW  VARIABLE   P3-P2                        TXN ELAPSED TIME
TXNQ  VARIABLE   P3-P2-P4                     TXN WAIT TIME
TXNX  VARIABLE   P4
RTOK  BVARIABLE  (X$KXL1'L'X$KXM1)*(X$KXL2'L'X$KXM2)*PNU$GBUS
BVA1  BVARIABLE  (X$DYL11'L'X$DYM11)*PNU$DRP11
BVA2  BVARIABLE  (X$KXL1'L'X$KXM1)*PNU$LBUS1
BVA3  BVARIABLE  (X$DYL21'L'X$DYM21)*PNU$DRP21
BVA21 BVARIABLE  (X$DYL22'L'X$DYM22)*PNU$DRP22
BVA4  BVARIABLE  (X$KXL2'L'X$KXM2)*PNU$LBUS2
BVA5  BVARIABLE  (X$KYL2'L'X$KYM2)*PNU$KRP2
BVA6  BVARIABLE  (X$KXL1'L'X$KXM1)*PNU$GBUS
BVA7  BVARIABLE  (X$DXL11'L'X$DXM11)*PNU$LBUS1
BVA8  BVARIABLE  (X$DYL31'L'X$DYM31)*PNU$DRP31
BVA22 BVARIABLE  (X$DYL32'L'X$DYM32)*PNU$DRP32
BVA9  BVARIABLE  (X$KXL3'L'X$KXM3)*PNU$LBUS3
BVA10 BVARIABLE  (X$KYL3'L'X$KYM3)*PNU$KRP3
BVA11 BVARIABLE  (X$RXL2'L'X$RXM2)*PNU$LBUS2
BVA12 BVARIABLE  (X$RYL2'L'X$RYM2)*PNU$RRP2
BVA13 BVARIABLE  (X$DXL21'L'X$DXM21)*PNU$LBUS2
BVA23 BVARIABLE  (X$DXL22'L'X$DXM22)*PNU$LBUS2
```

```
BVA14  BVARIABLE    (X$KYL1'L'X$KYM1)*FNU$KRP1
BVA15  BVARIABLE    (X$KXL2'L'X$KXM2)*FNU$GBUS
BVA16  BVARIABLE    (X$KXL3'L'X$KXM3)*FNU$GBUS
BVA17  BVARIABLE    (X$RXL3'L'X$RXM3)*FNU$LBUS3
BVA18  BVARIABLE    (X$RYL3'L'X$RYM3)*FNU$RRP3
BVA19  BVARIABLE    (X$DXL31'L'X$DXM31)*FNU$LBUS3
BVA24  BVARIABLE    (X$DXL32'L'X$DXM32)*FNU$LBUS3
BVA20  BVARIABLE    (X$KYL1'L'X$KYM1)*FNU$KRP1
```

```
***********************************************************************
*                                                                     *
*   QTABLE DEFINITIONS - DISTRIBUTIONS OF QUEUE LENGTHS               *
*                                                                     *
***********************************************************************


***********************************************************************
*                                                                     *
*  FUNCTION DEFINITIONS                                                *
*                                                                     *
***********************************************************************
```

```
WICHW  FUNCTION    P1,D3
2,WWW11/3,WWW12/4,WWW13

WICHA  FUNCTION    P1,D3
2,AAA11/3,AAA12/4,AAA13
```

```
***********************************************************************
*                                                                     *
*  TABLE DEFINITIONS - DISTRIBUTIONS OF TXN ELAPSED TIME,             *
*                      WAIT TIME                                       *
*                                                                     *
***********************************************************************
```

```
TXNW   TABLE       V$TXNW,100,100,100
TXNQ   TABLE       V$TXNQ,100,100,100
TXNX   TABLE       V$TXNX,100,100,100
```

```
***********************************************************************
*                                                                     *
*  INITIALIZE CONSTANTS                                                *
*                                                                     *
***********************************************************************
```

```
           INITIAL     X$MAXMP,20        DEGREE OF MULTIPROGRAMMING OF A CPU
           INITIAL     X$NREAD,700       % READ TXN
           INITIAL     X$NWRIT,300       % WRITE TXN
           INITIAL     X$PIN1,400        PROB OF FINDING READ DATA IN L(1)
           INITIAL     X$PIN2,400        PROB OF NOT IN L(1) AND IN L(2)
           INITIAL     X$PIN3,1000       PROB OF FINDING DATA IN L(3)
           INITIAL     X$POV1,500        PROB OF OVERFLOW FROM L(1)
           INITIAL     X$POV2,500        PROB OF OVERFLOW FROM L(2)
           INITIAL     X$DXM11,10        MAXIMUM DATA QUEUE LENGTH
```

```
        INITIAL    X$DYM11,10
        INITIAL    X$DXM12,10
        INITIAL    X$DYM12,10
        INITIAL    X$DXM13,10
        INITIAL    X$DYM13,10
        INITIAL    X$DXM21,10
        INITIAL    X$DYM21,10
        INITIAL    X$DXM22,10
        INITIAL    X$DYM22,10
        INITIAL    X$DXM31,10
        INITIAL    X$DYM31,10
        INITIAL    X$DXM32,10
        INITIAL    X$DYM32,10
        INITIAL    X$KXM1,10
        INITIAL    X$KYM1,10
        INITIAL    X$KXM2,10
        INITIAL    X$KYM2,10
        INITIAL    X$KXM3,10
        INITIAL    X$KYM3,10
        INITIAL    X$RXM2,10
        INITIAL    X$RYM2,10
        INITIAL    X$RXM3,10
        INITIAL    X$RYM3,10
        INITIAL    X$DEX11,100        ACCESS TIME OF D11 IN NANOSEC
        INITIAL    X$DEX12,100
        INITIAL    X$DEX13,100
        INITIAL    X$DEX21,1000       ACCESS TIME OF D21 IN NANOSEC
        INITIAL    X$DEX22,1000
        INITIAL    X$DEX31,10000      ACCESS TIME OF D31 IN NANOSEC
        INITIAL    X$DEX32,10000
        INITIAL    X$BEXD1,100         BUS SERV. TIME IN NANOSEC
        INITIAL    X$BEXD2,1600
        INITIAL    X$BEXM,100
        INITIAL    X$KEX,100          L(I) CONTR. P. SERV. TIME IN NANOS
        INITIAL    X$REX,200          REQ. P. SERVICE TIME IN NANOS
        INITIAL    X$TIMER,1000000    SIMULATION TIME



********************************
*                              *
*  MACRO -UTX                  *
*                              *
********************************

   UTX  STARTMACRO
        SEIZE      #A
        DEPART     #B
        ASSIGN     4+,#C
        ASSIGN     7,#C
        ADVANCE    P7
        RELEASE    #A
        ENDMACRO

********************************
```

```
*                                        *
*     MACRO - UQTQ                       *
*                                        *
****************************************

   UQTQ   STARTMACRO
          QUEUE        #A
          SEIZE        #B
          DEPART       #A
          ASSIGN       4+,#D
          ASSIGN       7,#D
          ADVANCE      P7
          RELEASE      #B
          QUEUE        #C
          ENDMACRO


**************************
*                        *
*   MACRO - UQT          *
*                        *
**************************

   UQT    STARTMACRO
          QUEUE        #A
          SEIZE        #B
          DEPART       #A
          ASSIGN       4+,#C
          ASSIGN       7,#C
          ADVANCE      P7
          RELEASE      #B
          ENDMACRO


************************************
*                                  *
*    MACRO - UQDQ                   *
*                                  *
************************************

   UQDQ   STARTMACRO
          QUEUE        #A
          TEST E       #G,1
          SAVEVALUE    #D,1
          SEIZE        #E
          DEPART       #A
          SAVEVALUE    #D,1
          ASSIGN       4+,#F
          ASSIGN       7,#F
          ADVANCE      P7
          RELEASE      #E
          QUEUE        #C
          ENDMACRO


****************************
*                          *
```

```
*   MACRO - UQD            *
*                          *
****************************

UQD    STARTMACRO
       QUEUE       #A
       TEST E      #G,1
       SAVEVALUE   #D,1
       SEIZE       #E
       DEPART      #A
       SAVEVALUE   #B,1
       ASSIGN      4+,#F
       ASSIGN      7,#F
       ADVANCE     P7
       RELEASE     #E
       ENDMACRO


*************************************
*                                   *
*   MACRO - FINI                    *
*                                   *
*************************************

FINI   STARTMACRO
       MARK        3
       SAVEVALUE   NTXN+,1
       SAVEVALUE   SUMX+,V$TXNX
       SAVEVALUE   SUMQ+,V$TXNQ
       SAVEVALUE   SUMW+,V$TXNW
       SAVEVALUE   MRESP,V$MRESP
       TABULATE    TXNW
       TABULATE    TXNQ
       TABULATE    TXNX
       ASSIGN      1,0
       ASSIGN      2,0
       ASSIGN      3,0
       ASSIGN      4,0
       ASSIGN      5,0
       ASSIGN      6,0
       ENDMACRO


       SIMULATE
************************************
*                                  *
*   CPU #1                          *
*                                  *
************************************

 CPU1  GENERATE    ,,,X$MAXMP,,,F
****************************
* START FOR CPU1 TXNS    *
****************************
 STAR1 PRIORITY    9           SET HIGH PRIORITY
       MARK        2           ARRIVAL TIME OF TXN
       ASSIGN      1,1         SET CPU ID = 1
```

```
        TRANSFER    .X$NREAD,WWW1,RRR1      READ OR WRITE TXN?
*************************
* READ TXN FROM CPU1    *
*************************
 RRR1   QUEUE       DIQ11                   READ TXN
        SEIZE       DRP11
        DEPART      DIQ11
        PRIORITY    0                       RESET PRIORITY
        ASSIGN      4+,X$REX                TIME FOR DIRECTORY SEARCH
        ASSIGN      7,X$REX
        ADVANCE     P7
        RELEASE     DRP11
        TRANSFER    .X$PIN1,NIN11,IND11 IS DATA IN L(1)?
*************************
* READ TXN FROM CPU1    *
* IS SATISFIED IN L(1)  *
*************************

 IND11 ASSIGN       11,0


*************************
* READ DATA FROM D11    *
*************************

 UQT   MACRO        DIQ11,DRP11,X$DEX11

*************************
* USE FINI MACRO        *
* THE TXN IS COMPLETED  *
*************************

 FINI   MACRO
        TRANSFER    ,STAR1                  THE TXN BECOMES A NEW TXN
*************************
* READ TXN FROM CPU1 IS *
* NOT SATISFIED IN L(1) *
*************************

 NIN11 QUEUE        DOQ11


*************************
* USE UTX TO USE        *
* THE LOCAL BUS LBUS1   *
*************************
 UTX   MACRO        LBUS1,DOQ11,X$BEXM
        TRANSFER    ,COMR                   GO TO COMMON CODE FOR READ
*************************
* WRITE TXN FROM CPU1   *
*************************
 WWW1   QUEUE       DIQ11
        TEST E      BV$BVA1,1               D11 OUT QUEUE AND DRP FREE?
        SAVEVALUE   DYL11+,1                SAVE SPACE IN OUT Q
        SEIZE       DRP11
        PRIORITY    0                       RESET PRIORITY
        DEPART      DIQ11
```

```
          ASSIGN     4+,X$DEX11        TIME FOR WRITING DATA
          ASSIGN     7,X$DEX11
          ADVANCE    P7
          RELEASE    DRP11
          SPLIT      1,STB1            CREATE A STORE-BEHIND TXN
*************************
* WRITE TXN IS COMPLETED*
**************************
 FINI  MACRO
          TRANSFER   ,STAR1            BECOMES A NEW TXN FROM CPU1
**************************
* STORE-BEHIND TXN       *
**************************
 STB1  QUEUE      DYQ11             PUT TXN IN DATA QUEUE

          TEST E     BV$BVA2,1         K1 IN-Q AND LBUS1 FREE ?
          SAVEVALUE  KXL1+,1           RESERVE SPACE IN IN-Q

**************************
* USE LBUS1 TO SEND TXN   *
* FROM D11 TO K1          *
**************************
 UTX   MACRO      LBUS1,DYQ11,X$BEXD1
          SAVEVALUE  DYL11-,1          RELEASE SPACE IN D11
          TRANSFER   ,COMW             TO COMMON CODE FOR WRITE

**************************
* COMMON CODE FOR        *
* READ TO LOWER LEVELS   *
* JOINED BY ALL CPUS     *
**************************

 COMR  ASSIGN     11,0              DUMMY STATEMENT
**************************
* USE K1                 *
**************************
 UQTQ  MACRO      KIQ1,KRP1,KOQ1,X$KEX
**************************
* USE GLOBAL BUS GBUS    *
**************************
 UTX   MACRO      GBUS,KOQ1,X$BEXM
**************************
* USE K2                 *
**************************
 UQTQ  MACRO      KIQ2,KRP2,KOQ2,X$KEX
**************************
*  USE LOCAL BUS LBUS2    *
**************************
 UTX   MACRO      LBUS2,KOQ2,X$BEXM
**************************
* USE R2 TO SEE IF DATA  *
* IS IN L(2)             *
**************************

 UQT   MACRO      RIQ2,RRP2,X$REX
```

```
        TRANSFER    .X$PIN2,NIN2,INL2     IS DATA IN L(2)?
*************************
* DATA IS NOT FOUND IN  *
* L(2)                  *
*************************

  NIN2  QUEUE     ROQ2


*************************
* USE LBUS2 SEND TXN TO *
* K2                    *
*************************
  UTX   MACRO     LBUS2,ROQ2,X$BEXM
*************************
*   SERVICED BY K2      *
*************************
  UQTQ  MACRO     KIQ2,KRP2,KOQ2,X$KEX
*************************
* USE GBUS SEND TXN  TO *
* K3                    *
*************************
  UTX   MACRO     GBUS,KOQ2,X$BEXM
*************************
* SERVICED BY K3        *
*************************
  UQTQ  MACRO     KIQ3,KRP3,KOQ3,X$KEX
*************************
* USE LBUS3 SEND TXN TO *
* R3                    *
*************************
  UTX   MACRO     LBUS3,KOQ3,X$BEXM
*************************
* SEARCH DIRECTORY IN   *
* R3 FOR DATA           *
*************************

  UQT   MACRO     RIQ3,RRP3,X$REX
        TRANSFER    ,INL3              DATA IS IN L(3)
***************************************
* DATA IS FOUND IN L(2), READ THE *
* DATA AND SEND IT UP TO L(1)     *
***************************************

  INL2  QUEUE     ROQ2


*************************
* SEND TXN TO DEVICE    *
* VIA LBUS2             *
*************************
  UTX   MACRO     LBUS2,ROQ2,X$BEXM


*********************************
* IS DATA IN D11 OR D12?        *
*********************************
```

```
              TRANSFER   .5,RRR21,RRR22

     ***********************
     * DATA IS IN D11    *
     ***********************

     RRR21 QUEUE       DIQ21                QUEUE TO RETRIEVE DATA
           TEST E      BV$BVA3,1            D21 OUT-Q AND DRP21 FREE?
           SAVEVALUE   DYL21+,1             SAVE SPACE IN D21 OUT-Q

     **************************
     * USE D21 TO RETRIEVE   *
     * THE DATA              *
     **************************
     UTX   MACRO       DRP21,DIQ21,X$DEX21  RETRIEVE THE DATA
           QUEUE       DYQ21                PUT DATA IN SLOT

           TEST E      BV$BVA4,1            K2 IN-Q AND LBUS2 FREE?
           SAVEVALUE   KXL2+,1              RESERVE K2 IN-Q SLOT

     ***************************
     * USE LBUS2 SEND DATA TO *
     * K2                     *
     ***************************
     UTX   MACRO       LBUS2,DYQ21,X$BEXD1

           SAVEVALUE   DYL21-,1             RELEASE SLOT IN D21 OUT-QUEUE
           TRANSFER    ,RTF2                TO CODE FOR READ-THROUGH FROM L(2)

     *********************
     * DATA IS IN D22    *
     *********************

     RRR22 QUEUE       DIQ22
           TEST E      BV$BVA21,1
           SAVEVALUE   DYL22+,1

     UTX   MACRO       DRP22,DIQ22,X$DEX22

           QUEUE       DYQ22
           TEST E      BV$BVA4,1
           SAVEVALUE   KXL2+,1

     UTX   MACRO       LBUS2,DYQ22,X$BEXD1

           SAVEVALUE   DYL22-,1
           TRANSFER    ,RTF2

     ************************************
     * READ THROUGH FROM LEVEL L(2)     *
     ************************************

     RTF2  ASSIGN      11,0
```

```
*****************************
* SERVICED BY K2           *
*****************************
 UQDQ   MACRO       KXQ2,KXL2-,KYQ2,KYL2+,KRP2,X$KEX,BV$BVA5

        TEST E      BV$BVA6,1        K1 IN-Q AND GBUS FREE?
        SAVEVALUE   KXL1+,1          RESERVE K1 IN-Q SLOT

************************
* USE GBUS TO SEND DATA TO*
* K1                     *
************************
 UTX    MACRO       GBUS,KYQ2,X$BEXD1
        SAVEVALUE   KYL2-,1          RELEASE SLOT IN K2

****************************************
* STORE DATA INTO L(1) AS A RESULT*
* OF READ-THROUGH                  *
****************************************

 STOR1 ASSIGN       11,0

****************************
*   SERVICED BY K1         *
****************************

 UQD    MACRO       KXQ1,KXL1-,,KYL1+,KRP1,X$KEX,BV$BVA20


********************************
* SEND TO D11 OR D12           *
********************************

        SPLIT       1,FN$WICHW,1     WHICH DATA CACHE TO GO?
        TERMINATE

*********************
* STORE TO D11     *
*********************

 WWW11 ASSIGN       11,0             WRITE TO D11
        QUEUE       KYQ1
        TEST E      BV$BVA7,1        SPACE IN D11 IN-Q AND LBUS1 FREE?
        SAVEVALUE   DXL11+,1         YES, RESERVE A SLOT

**************************
* SEND TXN TO D11 VIA    *
* LBUS1                  *
**************************

 UTX    MACRO       LBUS1,KYQ1,X$BEXD1

        SAVEVALUE   KYL1-,1          RELEASE K1 SLOT

*************************
```

```
* WRITE DATA TO D11     *
*****************************

 UQT   MACRO      DXQ11,DRP11,X$DEX11

       SAVEVALUE  DXL11-,1
       TRANSFER   .X$POV1,NOV11,OVL11     ANY OVERFLOW FROM L(1)?


***************************
* NO OVERFLOW FROM L(1) *
***************************

 NOV11 ASSIGN      11,0


***********************
* THE READ TXN HAS ENDED*
***********************

 FINI  MACRO
       TRANSFER   ,STAR1


***********************
* THERE IS OVERFLOW FROM*
* L(1), END THE READ    *
* TXN, AT THE SAME TIME  *
* HANDLE THE OVERFLOW    *
***********************

 OVL11 SPLIT      1,OVF11           GOT OVERFLOW HANDLING
 FINI  MACRO                        AT T'E SAME TIME END THE TXN
       TRANSFER   ,STAR1


***********************
* OVERFLOW HANDLING FOR *
* D11                   *
***********************

 OVF11 ASSIGN      11,0

 UQT   MACRO      DOQ11,LBUS1,X$BEXM
       TRANSFER   ,OVL1             GOTO COMMON CODE FOR OVERFLOW


*************************************
*  WWW12                            *
*************************************

*************************************
*  WWW13                            *
*************************************

 WWW12 ASSIGN      11,0
 WWW13 ASSIGN      11,0
***********************************
* COMMON CODE FOR OVERFLOW FROM   *
* L(1)                            *
```

-262-

```
***********************************
OVL1   ASSIGN     11,C

*********************************************
* USE  K1, THEN GBUS, THEN K2   *
* THEN LBUS2, THEN USE R2                    *
*********************************************

 UQTQ   MACRO      KIQ1,KRP1,KOQ1,X$KEX

 UTX    MACRO      GBUS,KOQ1,X$BEXM

 UQTQ   MACRO      KIQ2,KRP2,KOQ2,X$KEX

 UTX    MACRO      LBUS2,KOQ2,X$BEXM

        QUEUE      RIQ2

 UTX    MACRO      RRP2,RIQ2,X$REX

        TERMINATE

***************************
* DATA IS FOUND IN L(3) *
***************************

 INL3   QUEUE        ROQ3

***************************
* USE LBUS3 SEND TXN TO   *
* D31                     *
***************************

 UTX    MACRO      LBUS3,ROQ3,X$BEXM


*********************************
* READ FROM D31 OR D32?        *
*********************************

        TRANSFER    .5,RRR31,RRR32

*********************
* READ FROM D31     *
*********************

 RRR31  QUEUE        DIQ31
        TEST E       BV$BVA8,1              SPACE IN D31 OUT-Q AND DRP31 FREE?
        SAVEVALUE    DYL31+,1

*************************
* READ DATA FROM D31    *
*************************
```

```
UTX    MACRO      DRP31,DIQ31,X$DEX31

       QUEUE      DYQ31
       TEST E     BV$BVA9,1          SPACE IN K3 IN-Q AND LBUS3 FREE?
       SAVEVALUE  KXL3+,1            YES, RESERVE SLOT
```

```
*************************
* USE LBUS3 SEND DATA TO  *
* K3                      *
*************************
```

```
UTX    MACRO      LBUS3,DYQ31,X$BEXD2

       SAVEVALUE  DYL31-,1
       TRANSFER   ,RTF3              GO TO READ-THROUGH FROM L(3)
```

```
*******************
* READ FROM D32    *
*******************
```

```
RRR32 QUEUE       DIQ32
       TEST E     BV$BVA22,1
       SAVEVALUE  DYL32+,1

UTX    MACRO      DRP32,DIQ32,X$DEX32

       QUEUE      DYQ32
       TEST E     BV$BVA9,1
       SAVEVALUE  KXL3+,1

UTX    MACRO      LBUS3,DYQ32,X$BEXD2

       SAVEVALUE  DYL32-,1
       TRANSFER   ,RTF3
```

```
****************************************
* READ-THROUGH FROM L(3) DATA IS  *
* SENT TO L(2) AND L(1) AT THE    *
* SAME TIME                       *
****************************************
```

```
RTF3  ASSIGN      11,0
```

```
***************************
*   SERVICED BY K3         *
***************************
```

```
UQDQ   MACRO      KXQ3,KXL3-,KYQ3,KYL3+,KRP3,X$KEX,BV$BVA10

       TEST E     BV$RTOK,1          L(1) & L(2) READY & GBUS FREE?
       SAVEVALUE  KXL1+,1
       SAVEVALUE  KXL2+,1
```

```
***************************
* BOTH L(1) AND L(2)       *
```

```
*  READY TO ACCEPT DATA  *
*  FROM GBUS                  *
*****************************

   UTX    MACRO       GBUS,KYQ3,X$BEXD2

          SAVEVALUE   KYL3-,1
          SPLIT       1,STOR1          READ-THROUGH TO L(1)


*************************
*  READ-THROUGH TO L(2)  *
*************************

   STOR2 ASSIGN       11,0

*************************
*  SERVICED BY K2           *
*************************

   UQDQ   MACRO       KXQ2,KXL2-,KYQ2,KYL2+,KRP2,X$KEX,BV$BVA5

          TEST E      BV$BVA11,1       SPACE IN R2 IN-Q AND LBUS2 FREE?
          SAVEVALUE   RXL2+,1          YES, RESERVE SLOT

*************************
*  USE LBUS2 SEND TO R2     *
*************************

   UTX    MACRO       LBUS2,KYQ2,X$BEXD2

          SAVEVALUE   KYL2-,1          FREE SLOT IN K2

*************************
*  SERVICED BY R2           *
*************************

   UQD    MACRO       RXQ2,RXL2-,,RYL2+,RRP2,X$REX,BV$BVA12

          SPLIT       1,OVH2           HANDLE ANY OVERFLOW

*******************************
*  STORE INTO D21 OR D22?        *
*******************************

          TRANSFER    .5,SSS21,SSS22

*************************
*  STORE INTO D21           *
*************************

   SSS21 QUEUE        RYQ2
         TEST E       BV$BVA13,1       D21 IN-Q AND LBUS2 FREE?
         SAVEVALUE    DXL21+,1         YES, RESERVE THE SPACE

*****************************
```

```
* SEND DATA TO D21 VIA BUS   *
*********************************

   UTX    MACRO      LBUS2,RYQ2,X$BEXD2

          SAVEVALUE  RYL2-,1          RELEASE SPACE IN R2

   UQT    MACRO      DXQ21,DRP21,X$DEX21

          SAVEVALUE  DXL21-,1
          TERMINATE

***************************
* STORE INTO D22          *
***************************

SSS22 QUEUE      RYQ2
      TEST E     BV$BVA23,1
      SAVEVALUE  DXL22+,1

   UTX    MACRO      LBUS2,RYQ2,X$BEXD2

          SAVEVALUE  RYL2-,1

   UQT    MACRO      DXQ22,DRP22,X$DEX22

          SAVEVALUE  DXL22-,1
          TERMINATE

*********************************
* HAND. ANY OVERF. FROM L(2) *
*********************************

   OVH2   TRANSFER   .X$POV2,NOV2,OVL2
   OVL2   QUEUE      ROQ2

****************************
* USE LBUS2, USE K2, USE   *
* GBUS, USE K3, USE LBUS3, *
* THEN USE R3              *
****************************

   UTX    MACRO      LBUS2,ROQ2,X$BEXM

   UQTQ   MACRO      KIQ2,KRP2,KOQ2,X$KEX

   UTX    MACRO      GBUS,KOQ2,X$BEXM

   UQTQ   MACRO      KIQ3,KRP3,KOQ3,X$KEX

   UTX    MACRO      LBUS3,KOQ3,X$BEXM

   UQT    MACRO      RIQ3,RRP3,X$REX

   NOV2   TERMINATE
```

```
**************************
* COMMON CODE FOR WRITE *
* TO LOWER LEVELS       *
**************************
 COMW   ASSIGN       11,0              DUMMY STATEMENT

**************************
* SERVICED BY K1        *
**************************

 UQDQ   MACRO       KXQ1,KXL1-,KYQ1,KYL1+,KRP1,X$KEX,BV$BVA14

        TEST E      BV$BVA15,1        K2 IN-Q AND GBUS FREE?
        SAVEVALUE   KXL2+,1

**************************
* USE GBUS              *
**************************

 UTX    MACRO       GBUS,KYQ1,X$BEXD1
        SAVEVALUE   KYL1-,1

**************************
* SERVICED BY K2        *
**************************

 UQDQ   MACRO       KXQ2,KXL2-,KYQ2,KYL2+,KRP2,X$KEX,BV$BVA5

        TEST E      BV$BVA11,1        R2 IN-Q AND LBUS2 FREE?
        SAVEVALUE   RXL2+,1

**************************
* USE LBUS2             *
**************************

 UTX    MACRO       LBUS2,KYQ2,X$BEXD1
        SAVEVALUE   KYL2-,1

**************************
* SERVICED BY R2        *
**************************

 UQD    MACRO       RXQ2,RXL2-,,RYL2+,RRP2,X$REX,BV$BVA12

********************************
* SERVED BY D21 OR D22?        *
********************************

        TRANSFER    .5,SWS21,SWS22

**************************
* SERVICED BY D21       *
**************************
```

```
SWS21 QUEUE        RYQ2
      TEST E       BV$BVA13,1
      SAVEVALUE    DXL21+,1

UTX   MACRO        LBUS2,RYQ2,X$BEXD1

      SAVEVALUE    RYL2-,1
UQDQ  MACRO        DXQ21,DXL21-,DYQ21,DYL21+,DRP21,X$DEX21,BV$BVA3

      TEST E       BV$BVA4,1          K2 IN-Q AND LBUS2 FREE?
      SAVEVALUE    KXL2+,1

***********************
* USE LBUS2 SEND TO K2  *
***********************

UTX   MACRO        LBUS2,DYQ21,X$BEXD2

      SAVEVALUE    DYL21-,1
      SPLIT        1,ACK2             PREPARE TO SEND ACK TO L(1)

      TRANSFER     ,STB23             GO TO STORE-BEHIND TO L(3)

******************************
* SEND ACK TO L(1)           *
******************************

ACK2  QUEUE        DOQ21

UTX   MACRO        LBUS2,DOQ21,X$BEXM

      TRANSFER     ,ACK21

****************************
* SERVICED BY D22          *
****************************

SWS22 QUEUE        RYQ2
      TEST E       BV$BVA23,1
      SAVEVALUE    DXL22+,1

UTX   MACRO        LBUS2,RYQ2,X$BEXD1

      SAVEVALUE    RYL2-,1

UQDQ  MACRO        DXQ22,DXL22-,DYQ22,DYL22+,DRP22,X$DEX22,BV$BVA21

      TEST E       BV$BVA4,1
      SAVEVALUE    KXL2+,1

UTX   MACRO        LBUS2,DYQ22,X$BEXD2

      SAVEVALUE    DYL22-,1
      SPLIT        1,ACK3
```

```
          TRANSFER    ,STB23

ACK3  QUEUE       DOQ22

UTX   MACRO       LBUS2,DOQ22,X$BEXM

          TRANSFER    ,ACK21


**************************
* STORE-BEHIND FROM      *
* L(2) TO L(3)           *
**************************

STB23 ASSIGN      11,0

UQDQ  MACRO       KXQ2,KXL2-,KYQ2,KYL2+,KRP2,X$KEX,BV$BVA5

          TEST E      BV$BVA16,1        K3 IN-Q AND GBUS FREE?
          SAVEVALUE   KXL3+,1

UTX   MACRO       GBUS,KYQ2,X$BEXD2

          SAVEVALUE   KYL2-,1

UQDQ  MACRO       KXQ3,KXL3-,KYQ3,KYL3+,KRP3,X$KEX,BV$BVA10

          TEST E      BV$BVA17,1        R3 IN-Q AND LBUS3 FREE?
          SAVEVALUE   RXL3+,1

UTX   MACRO       LBUS3,KYQ3,X$BEXD2

          SAVEVALUE   KYL3-,1

UQD   MACRO       RXQ3,RXL3-,,RYL3+,RRP3,X$REX,BV$BVA18

**********************************
* SERVICED BY D31 OR D32?        *
**********************************

          TRANSFER    .5,SWS31,SWS32

**********************
* SERV. BY D31       *
**********************

SWS31 QUEUE       RYQ3
          TEST E      BV$BVA19,1
          SAVEVALUE   DXL31+,1

UTX   MACRO       LBUS3,RYQ3,X$BEXD2

          SAVEVALUE   RYL3-,1
```

```
UQT     MACRO       DXQ31,DRP31,X$DEX31

        SAVEVALUE   DXL31-,1

UQT     MACRO       DOQ31,LBUS3,X$BEXM
        TRANSFER    ,ACK22


********************
* SERV. BY D32  *
********************

SWS32 QUEUE         RYQ3
        TEST E      BV$BVA24,1
        SAVEVALUE   DXL32+,1

UTX     MACRO       LBUS3,RYQ3,X$BEXD2

        SAVEVALUE   RYL3-,1

UQT     MACRO       DXQ32,DRP32,X$DEX32

        SAVEVALUE   DXL32-,1

UQT     MACRO       DOQ32,LBUS3,X$BEXM

        TRANSFER    ,ACK22


*****************************************
* ACK FROM L(2) TO L(3)           *
*****************************************

ACK22 ASSIGN       11,0

UQTQ    MACRO       KIQ3,KRP3,KOQ3,X$KEX

UTX     MACRO       GBUS,KOQ3,X$BEXM

UQTQ    MACRO       KIQ2,KRP2,KOQ2,X$KEX

UTX     MACRO       LBUS2,KOQ2,X$BEXM

UQTQ    MACRO       RIQ2,RRP2,ROQ2,X$REX

UTX     MACRO       LBUS2,ROQ2,X$BEXM
        TRANSFER    ,ACK21

*****************************************
* ACK FROM L(2) TO L(1)           *
*****************************************

ACK21 ASSIGN       11,0

UQTQ    MACRO       KIQ2,KRP2,KOQ2,X$KEX
```

```
UTX    MACRO      GBUS,KOQ2,X$BEXM

UQTQ   MACRO      KIQ1,KRP1,KOQ1,X$KEX

UTX    MACRO      LBUS1,KOQ1,X$BEXM
       SPLIT      1,FN$WICHA,1
       TERMINATE
AAA11  ASSIGN     11,0
AAA12  ASSIGN     11,0
AAA13  ASSIGN     11,0
       QUEUE      DIQ11
       SEIZE      DRP11
       DEPART     DIQ11
       ASSIGN     4+,X$REX
       ASSIGN     7,X$REX
       ADVANCE    P7
       RELEASE    DRP11
       TERMINATE


****************
* AAA12        *
****************

****************
*  AAA13       *
****************


*************************************
*                                   *
*   TIMER SEGMENT - TIME UNIT  IS   *
*   ONE NANOSECOND                  *
*************************************

       GENERATE   X$TIMER
       TERMINATE  1

       START      1
       END
/*
```

-271-

Appendix B

FLOW CHART OF THE P5L4 MODEL

```
                              (star1)

                                 |
                                 v

                  ┌──────────────────────────────┐
        ┌────────>│            CPU1               │<══════╗
        │         └──────────────────────────────┘       ║
        │                        │                        ║
        │                        v                        ║
        │                    ╱───────╲                    ║
        │                   ╱  type   ╲                ┌────────────┐
        │                  ╱    of     ╲   (www1)      │  write to  │
        │                  ╲   TXN     ╱─────────────> │            │
        │                   ╲         ╱                │    D11     │
        │                    ╲───────╱                 └────────────┘
        │              (rrr1)    │                          ║
        │                        v                          v
    ┌──────────┐          ┌──────────────┐          ┌──────────────┐
    │read from │          │              │          │    send      │
    │          │          │   search     │          │ store-behind │
    │   D11    │          │              │          │  to K1 via   │
    └──────────┘          │  directory   │          │    lbus1     │
        ^                 └──────────────┘          └──────────────┘
        │                        │                          │
        │                        v                          v
        │                    ╱───────╲                  ┌───────┐
        │         yes       ╱   in    ╲                 │       │
        └──────────────────╱           ╲                └───────┘
                           ╲   D11?    ╱
                            ╲         ╱                   (comw)
                             ╲───────╱
                                 │ no
                                 v
                         ┌──────────────┐
                         │   send to    │
                         │   K1 via     │
                         │    lbus1     │
                         └──────────────┘
                                 │
                                 v
                             ┌───────┐
                             │       │
                             └───────┘

                              (comr)
```

(star2)

2

CPU2

type
of
txn

(www2) → write to D12

(rrr2)

search
directory

read from
D12

in
D12?

yes

no

send to
K1 via lbus1

send
store-behind
to K1 via lbus1

(comw)

(comr)

-274-

(star4)

4

CPU4

type
of txn

(www4) → write to
D14

(rrr4)

read from
D14

search
directory

send
store-behind
to K1 via lbus1

yes

in
D14?

no

(comw)

send to K1
via lbus1

(comr)

```
                          (star5)

                            5

                           CPU5

                         type
                        of txn        (www5)      write to
                                                    D15
               (rrr5)

    read from            search                   send
      D15               directory                 store-behind
                                                  to K1 via lbus1

                           in
              yes         D15?
                                                   (comw)
                          no

                       send to K1
                       via lbus1

                         (comr)
```

```
                                              ┌─────────┐
                                              │  in     │──── yes ───▶ ⬡
                                              │  L3?    │            (inl3)
                    ┌──────────┐              └────┬────┘
                    │          │                   │
                    │   R3     │────────▶          no
                    │          │                   │
                    └────┬─────┘                   ▼
(·comr)                  ▲              ┌────────────────┐
   │                     │              │  send to       │
   ▼                     │              │  K3 via lbus3  │
  ⬡                ┌──────────┐         └───────┬────────┘
  6                │ send to R3│                 │
   │               │ via lbus3 │                 ▼
   ▼               └──────────┘          ┌──────────┐
┌──────────┐            ▲                │          │
│          │            │                │   K3     │
│   K1     │            │                │          │
│          │       ┌──────────┐          └────┬─────┘
└────┬─────┘       │          │                │
     │             │   K3     │                ▼
     ▼             │          │        ┌────────────────┐
┌──────────┐       └──────────┘        │  send to K4    │
│ send to  │            ▲              │  via gbus      │
│ K2 via   │            │              └───────┬────────┘
│ gbus     │       ┌──────────┐                │
└────┬─────┘       │ send to K3│                ▼
     │             │ via gbus  │         ┌──────────┐
     ▼             └──────────┘          │          │
┌──────────┐            ▲                │   K4     │
│          │            │                │          │
│   K2     │            │                └────┬─────┘
│          │       ┌──────────┐               │
└────┬─────┘       │          │               ▼
     │             │   K2     │       ┌────────────────┐
     ▼             │          │       │  send to R4    │
┌──────────┐       └──────────┘       │  via lbus4     │
│ send to R2│           ▲             └───────┬────────┘
│ via lbus2 │           │                     │
└────┬─────┘            │                     ▼
     │            ┌────────────────┐    ┌──────────┐
     ▼            │  send to K2    │    │          │
┌──────────┐      │  via lbus2     │    │   R4     │
│          │      └────────────────┘    │          │
│   R2     │           ▲                └────┬─────┘
│          │           │                     │
└────┬─────┘           │ no                  ▼
     │          ┌─────────┐                 ⬡
     ▼          │  in     │
  ┌─────────┐   │  L2?    │──── no ──▶        (inl4)
  │  in     │   └────┬────┘
  │  L2?    │        
  └────┬────┘        yes
       │
      yes
       │
       ▼
      ⬡
   (inl2)
```


-278-

(inl3)

```
         q
         |
         v
   ┌───────────┐
   │  send to  │
   │ device via│
   │   lbus3   │
   └───────────┘
         │
    ┌────┴──────────────┐
    v (rrr31)           v (rrr32)
┌───────┐          ┌───────┐
│  D31  │          │  D32  │
└───────┘          └───────┘
    │                  │
    v                  v
┌───────────┐     ┌───────────┐
│ send to K3│     │ send to K3│
│ via lbus3 │     │ via lbus3 │
└───────────┘     └───────────┘
    │                  │
    └────►┌───────┐◄───┘
          │  K3   │
          └───────┘
              │
              v
        ┌───────────┐
        │ send to K1│
        │ and K2 via│
        │   gbus    │
        └───────────┘
            │   │
            v   v
        (storl) (stor2)
```

(stor2)

```
    ┌──┐
    │ I0 │
    └──┘
      │
      ▼
 ┌─────────┐
 │         │
 │   K2    │
 │         │
 └─────────┘
      │
      ▼
 ┌─────────┐
 │ send to R2 │
 │ via lbus2  │
 └─────────┘
      │
      ▼
 ┌─────────┐
 │   R2    │
 └─────────┘
```

no

```
  ◇ overflow? ◇
```

yes

(sss21)   (sss22)

```
 ( terminate )
```

```
 ┌─────────┐
 │ send to K2 │
 │ via lbus2  │
 └─────────┘
      │
      ▼
 ┌─────────┐
 │   K2    │
 └─────────┘
      │
      ▼
 ┌─────────┐
 │ send to K3 │
 │ via gbus   │
 └─────────┘
      │
      ▼
 ┌─────────┐
 │   K3    │
 └─────────┘
      │
      ▼
```

```
 ┌─────────┐
 │ send to D21 │
 │ via lbus2   │
 └─────────┘
      │
      ▼
 ┌─────────┐
 │ store into │
 │    D21     │
 └─────────┘
      │
      ▼
 ( terminate )
```

```
 ┌─────────┐      ┌─────────┐
 │ send to R3 │──▶ │   R3    │──▶ ( terminate )
 │ via lbus3  │    └─────────┘
 └─────────┘
```

-282-

(in14)

‖

send to device
via lbus4

(rrr41)   (rrr42)

D41   D42

send to K4   send to K4
via lbus4   via lbus4

K4

send to K1
K2 and K3
via gbus

(stor1)   (stor2)   (stor3)

(stor3)

```
        ┌─────┐
        │ 12  │
        └──┬──┘
           │
     ┌─────▼─────┐
     │           │
     │    K3     │
     │           │
     └─────┬─────┘
           │
     ┌─────▼─────┐
     │ send to R2│
     │           │
     │ via lbus3 │
     └─────┬─────┘
           │
     ┌─────▼─────┐
     │    R3     │
     └───────────┘
```

no ◄──── overflow? ────► yes

(sss31)   (sss32)

terminate

send to K3
via lbus3

K3

send to K4
via gbus

K4

send to R4   R4   terminate
via lbus4

send to D31
via lbus3

D31

terminate

(comw)

13

K1

send to K2
via gbus

K2

send to R2
via lbus2

R2

(sws21)   (sws22)

send to D21
via lbus2

D21

send to K2   send ack to
via lbus2   K2 via lbus2

(stb23)   (ack21)

-285-

(stb23)

14

K2

send to K3
via gbus

K3

send to R3
via lbus3

R3

(sws31)   (sws31)

send to D31
via lbus3

D31

send to K3   send ack to
via lbus3   K3 via lbus3

(stb34)   -286-   (ack32)

(stb34)

15

```
┌──────────────┐
│      K3      │
└──────────────┘
        │
        ▼
┌──────────────┐
│  send to K4  │
│  via gbus    │
└──────────────┘
        │
        ▼
┌──────────────┐
│      K4      │
└──────────────┘
        │
        ▼
┌──────────────┐
│  send to R4  │
│  via lbus4   │
└──────────────┘
        │
        ▼
┌──────────────┐
│      R4      │
└──────────────┘
```

(sws41)   (sws42)

```
┌──────────────┐
│  send to D41 │
│  via lbus4   │
└──────────────┘
        │
        ▼
┌──────────────┐
│     D41      │
└──────────────┘
        │
        ▼
┌──────────────┐     ┌──────────────┐
│ (do nothing) │═══▶ │ send ack to  │
│              │     │ K4 via lbus4 │
└──────────────┘     └──────────────┘
                            │
                            ▼
                          (ack43)
```

-287-

(ack21)

16

K2

send to K1

via gbus

K1

send to cache

via lbus1

(aaa13)

(aaa11) (aaa12)

(aaa14) (aaa15)

D13

terminate

(ack32)

17

```
        ┌─────────────┐
        │     K3      │
        └─────────────┘
               │
        ┌─────────────┐
        │ send to K2  │
        │ via gbus    │
        └─────────────┘
               │
        ┌─────────────┐
        │     K2      │
        └─────────────┘
               │
        ┌─────────────┐
        │ send to R2  │
        │ via lbus2   │
        └─────────────┘
               │
        ┌─────────────┐
        │     R2      │
        └─────────────┘
               │
        ┌─────────────┐
        │ send to K2  │
        │ via lbus2   │
        └─────────────┘
               │
```

(ack21)

(ack43)

```
        ┌─────┐
        │  18 │
        └──┬──┘
           │
           ▼
    ┌──────────────┐
    │      K4      │
    └──────┬───────┘
           │
           ▼
    ┌──────────────┐
    │  send to K3  │
    │   via gbus   │
    └──────┬───────┘
           │
           ▼
    ┌──────────────┐
    │      K3      │
    └──────┬───────┘
           │
           ▼
    ┌──────────────┐
    │  send to R3  │
    │   via lbus3  │
    └──────┬───────┘
           │
           ▼
    ┌──────────────┐
    │      R3      │
    └──────┬───────┘
           │
           ▼
    ┌──────────────┐
    │  send to K3  │
    │   via lbus3  │
    └──────┬───────┘
           │
           ▼
        ┌─────┐
        │     │
        └─────┘
```

(ack32)

Appendix C

LISTING OF THE P5L4 MODEL

```
//LAM4 JOB LAM,MPROFILE='RETURN',
// PROFILE='LOW',
// TIME=9
//*PASSWORD
//GPSS PROC
//C    EXEC  PGM=DAG01,TIME=&TLIMIT
//STEPLIB DD DSN=POTLUCK.LIBEARY.GPSS.LOAD,DISP=SHR
//DOUTPUT DD SYSOUT=PROFILE=RETURN,DCB=BLKSIZE=931
//DINTERO DD UNIT=SCRATCH,SPACE=(CYL,(1,1)),DCB=BLKSIZE=1880
//DSYMTAB DD UNIT=SCRATCH,SPACE=(CYL,(1,1)),DCB=BLKSIZE=7112
//DREPTGEN DD UNIT=SCRATCH,SPACE=(CYL,(1,1)),DCB=BLKSIZE=800
//DINTWORK DD UNIT=SCRATCH,SPACE=(CYL,(1,1)),DCB=BLKSIZE=2680
// PEND
//STEP1  EXEC  GPSS,PARM=C,TLIMIT=9
//DINPUT1 DD *
        REALLOCATE FUN,5,QUE,10,FAC,50,BVR,200,BLO,2000,VAR,50
        REALLOCATE FSV,50,HSV,10,COM,40000

**************************
*                        *
* TXN PARM USAGE         *
*                        *
*  P1    CPU ID          *
*  P2    TXN ARRIVAL TIME*
*  P3    TXN COMPL TIME   *
*  P4    TXN EXEC TIME    *
*  P11   DUMMY           *
*                        *
**************************

**************************
*                        *
*  MODEL COMPONENTS       *
*                        *
* BUSES: GBUS, LBUS1,..  *
* CACHES: D11,...D15     *
* LEVEL CONTRL: K1,...K4*
* REQ PROCS: R2, .. R4  *
* DEVICES: D21, ...D42  *
* STORAGE : RI, RO      *
* STORAGE : SI, SO      *
* STORAGE : TI, TO      *
* STORAGE : AI, AO      *
* STORAGE : OI, OO      *
*                        *
**************************

**************************
*                        *
* MODEL PARAMETERS       *
*                        *
**************************

        INITIAL    X$MAXMP,10       DEGREE OF MULTIPROG PER CPU
        INITIAL    X$NREAD,500      % READ REQ
```

-292-

```
            INITIAL     X$NWRIT,500      % WRITE REQ
            INITIAL     X$PIN1,900       CONDITIONAL PROB OF FINDING DATA
            INITIAL     X$PIN2,900       IN A LEVEL GIVEN THAT THE
            INITIAL     X$PIN3,900       DATA IS NOT FOUND IN ANY UPPER
            INITIAL     X$PIN4,1000      LEVEL
            INITIAL     X$POV1,500       PROB OF OVERFLOW
            INITIAL     X$POV2,500       .
            INITIAL     X$POV3,500
            INITIAL     X$DEX1,10        DEVICE SERVICE TIME
            INITIAL     X$DEX2,100
            INITIAL     X$DEX3,200
            INITIAL     X$DEX4,1000
            INITIAL     X$BEXM,10        BUS SERVICE TIME
            INITIAL     X$BEX1,10
            INITIAL     X$BEX2,80
            INITIAL     X$BEX3,320
            INITIAL     X$REX,20         DIRECTORY LOOK UP
            INITIAL     X$KEX,10         CONTROLLER SERV TIME
            INITIAL     X$RDEX1,30       LOOKUP PLUS READ TIME OF CACHE
            INITIAL     X$TIMER,200000   SIMULATION TIME


    ****************************
    *                          *
    * SAVEVALUES               *
    *                          *
    * NTXN TOTAL TXN PROC.     *
    * SUMX TOTAL EXEC TIMES    *
    * SUMW TOTAL WAIT TIMES    *
    * SUMT TOTAL ELAPSED TIM*
    *                          *
    ****************************


    ****************************
    *                          *
    *   VARIABLES              *
    *                          *
    ****************************

    MRESP  FVARIABLE   (X$SUMT/X$NTXN)        MEAN RESP TIME
    TXNT   VARIABLE    P3-P2                  TXN ELAPSED TIME
    TXNW   VARIABLE    P3-P2-P4               TXN WAIT TIME
    TXNX   VARIABLE    P4                     TXN EXEC TIME


    ****************************
    *                          *
    *   TABLES                 *
    *                          *
    ****************************

    TXNT   TABLE       V$TXNT,100,100,100
    TXNW   TABLE       V$TXNW,100,100,100
    TXNX   TABLE       V$TXNX,100,100,100


    ****************************
    *                          *
```

```
*  FUNCTIONS              *
*                         *
**************************

 WICHW FUNCTION    P1,D5
2,WWW11/3,WWW12/4,WWW13/5,WWW14/6,WWW15

 WICHA FUNCTION    P1,D5
2,AAA11/3,AAA12/4,AAA13/5,AAA14/6,AAA15

**************************
*                         *
* STORAGE FOR L(1)        *
* CACHES                  *
*                         *
**************************

        STORAGE       S$RID11,10/S$SID11,2/S$TID11,10/S$AID11,10
        STORAGE       S$RID12,10/S$SID12,2/S$TID12,10/S$AID12,10
        STORAGE       S$RID13,10/S$SID13,2/S$TID13,10/S$AID13,10
        STORAGE       S$RID14,10/S$SID14,2/S$TID14,10/S$AID14,10
        STORAGE       S$RID15,10/S$SID15,2/S$TID15,10/S$AID15,10

**************************
*                         *
* STORAGE FOR DEVICES     *
*                         *
**************************

        STORAGE       S$RID21,10/S$SID21,10/S$TID21,10
        STORAGE       S$RID22,10/S$SID22,10/S$TID22,10
        STORAGE       S$RID31,10/S$SID31,10/S$TID31,10
        STORAGE       S$RID32,10/S$SID32,10/S$TID32,10
        STORAGE       S$RID41,10/S$SID41,10/S$TID41,10
        STORAGE       S$RID42,10/S$SID42,10/S$TID42,10
**************************
*                         *
* STORAGE FOR REQ PROC    *
*                         *
**************************

        STORAGE       S$RIR2,10/S$SIR2,10/S$TIR2,10/S$AIR2,10/S$OIR2,10
        STORAGE       S$RIR3,10/S$SIR3,10/S$TIR3,10/S$AIR3,10/S$OIR3,10
        STORAGE       S$RIR4,10/S$SIR4,10/S$TIR4,10/S$AIR4,10/S$OIR4,10

**************************
*                         *
* STORAGE FOR K1          *
*                         *
**************************

        STORAGE       S$ROK1,10/S$SOK1,10/S$TIK1,10/S$AIK1,10/S$OOK1,10

**************************
*                         *
```

```
* STORAGE FOR K2,K3,K4  *
*                       *
*************************

       STORAGE     S$RIK2,10/S$SIK2,10/S$TIK2,10/S$AIK2,10/S$OIK2,10
       STORAGE     S$RIK3,10/S$SIK3,10/S$TIK3,10/S$AIK3,10/S$OIK3,10
       STORAGE     S$RIK4,10/S$SIK4,10/S$TIK4,10/S$AIK4,10/S$OIK4,10
       STORAGE     S$ROK2,10/S$SOK2,10/S$TOK2,10/S$AOK2,10/S$OOK2,10
       STORAGE     S$ROK3,10/S$SOK3,10/S$TOK3,10/S$AOK3,10/S$OOK3,10
       STORAGE     S$ROK4,10/S$SOK4,10/S$TOK4,10/S$AOK4,10/S$OOK4,10


*************************
*                       *
* BOOLEAN VARIABLES     *
*                       *
*************************


*************************
*                       *
* BV FOR READ-THROUGH   *
*                       *
*************************

 RTOK2 BVARIABLE    FNU$GBUS*SNF$TIK1
 RTOK3 BVARIABLE    FNU$GBUS*SNF$TIK1*SNF$TIK2
 RTOK4 BVARIABLE    FNU$GBUS*SNF$TIK1*SNF$TIK2*SNF$TIK3


*************************
*                       *
* BV FOR L(1)           *
*                       *
*************************

 DKR1  BVARIABLE    FNU$LBUS1*SNF$ROK1
 DKS1  BVARIABLE    FNU$LBUS1*SNF$SOK1
 DKO1  BVARIABLE    FNU$LBUS1*SNF$OOK1
 KDT11 BVARIABLE    FNU$LBUS1*SNF$TID11
 KDT12 BVARIABLE    FNU$LBUS1*SNF$TID12
 KDT13 BVARIABLE    FNU$LBUS1*SNF$TID13
 KDT14 BVARIABLE    FNU$LBUS1*SNF$TID14
 KDT15 BVARIABLE    FNU$LBUS1*SNF$TID15
 KDA11 BVARIABLE    FNU$LBUS1*SNF$AID11
 KDA12 BVARIABLE    FNU$LBUS1*SNF$AID12
 KDA13 BVARIABLE    FNU$LBUS1*SNF$AID13
 KDA14 BVARIABLE    FNU$LBUS1*SNF$AID14
 KDA15 BVARIABLE    FNU$LBUS1*SNF$AID15


*************************
*                       *
* BV FOR INTER LEVEL COM*
*                       *
*************************

 KKR12 BVARIABLE    FNU$GBUS*SNF$RIK2
 KKS12 BVARIABLE    FNU$GBUS*SNF$SIK2
```

```
     KKO12 BVARIABLE   FNU$GBUS*SNP$SOK2
     KKT21 BVARIABLE   FNU$GBUS*SNP$TIK1
     KKA21 BVAFIABLE   FNU$GBUS*SNP$AIK1
     KKF23 BVARIABLE   FNU$GBUS*SNP$RIK3
     KKS23 BVARIABLE   FNU$GBUS*SNF$SIK3
     KKO23 BVARIABLE   FNU$GBUS*SNF$OIK3
     KKT32 BVAPIABLE   FNU$GBUS*SNF$TIK2
     KKA32 BVAPIABLE   FNU$GBUS*SNP$AIK2
     KKR34 BVAPIABLE   FNU$GBUS*SNP$RIK4
     KKS34 BVARIABLE   FNU$GBUS*SNP$SIK4
     KKO34 BVARIABLE   FNU$GBUS*SNP$OIK4
     KKT43 BVARIABLE   FNU$GBU*SNP$TIK3
     KKA43 BVARIABLE   FNU$GBUS*SNP$AIK3


     ****************************
     *                          *
     * BV FOR L(2) OPS          *
     *                          *
     ****************************

     KRR2  BVARIABLE   FNU$LBUS2*SNF$RIR2
     KRS2  BVARIABLE   FNU$LBUS2*SNF$SIR2
     KRT2  BVARIABLE   FNU$LBUS2*SNF$TIR2
     KRA2  BVARIABLE   FNU$LBUS2*SNF$AIR2
     KRO2  BVARIABLE   FNU$LBUS2*SNF$OIR2
     RDR21 BVARIABLE   FNU$LBUS2*SNF$RID21
     FDS21 BVARIABLE   FNU$LBUS2*SNF$SID21
     RDT21 BVARIABLE   FNU$LBUS2*SNF$TID21
     RDR22 BVARIABLE   FNU$LBUS2*SNF$RID22
     RDS22 BVARIABLE   FNU$LBUS2*SNF$SID22
     RDT22 BVARIABLE   FNU$LBUS2*SNF$TID22
     DKS2  BVARIABLE   FNU$LBUS2*SNF$SOK2
     DKT2  BVARIABLE   FNU$LBUS2*SNF$TOK2
     DKA2  BVARIABLE   FNU$LBUS2*SNF$AOK2
     RKR2  BVARIABLE   FNU$LBUS2*SNF$ROK2
     PKO2  BVARIABLE   FNU$LBUS2*SNF$OOK2
     RKA2  BVARIABLE   FNU$LBUS2*SNF$AOK2


     ****************************
     *                          *
     * BV FOR L(3) OPS          *
     *                          *
     ****************************

     KRR3  BVARIABLE   FNU$LBUS3*SNF$RIR3
     KRS3  BVARIABLE   FNU$LBUS3*SNF$SIR3
     KRT3  BVARIABLE   FNU$LBUS3*SNF$TIR3
     KRA3  BVARIABLE   FNU$LBUS3*SNF$AIR3
     KRO3  BVARIABLE   FNU$LBUS3*SNF$OIR3
     RDR31 BVARIABLE   FNU$LBUS3*SNF$RID31
     RDS31 BVAFIABLE   FNU$LBUS3*SNF$SID31
     RDT31 BVARIABLE   FNU$LBUS3*SNF$TID31
     RDR32 BVARIABLE   FNU$LBUS3*SNF$RID32
     RDS32 BVARIABLE   FNU$LBUS3*SNF$SID32
     RDT32 BVARIABLE   FNU$LBUS3*SNF$TID32
```

```
DKS3   BVARIABLE   FNU$LBUS3*SNF$SOK3
DKT3   BVARIABLE   FNU$LBUS3*SNF$TOK3
DKA3   BVARIABLE   FNU$LBUS3*SNF$AOK3
PKR3   BVARIABLE   FNU$LBUS3*SNF$ROK3
RKA3   BVARIABLE   FNU$LBUS3*SNF$AOK3
RKO3   BVARIABLE   FNU$LBUS3*SNF$OOK3
```

```
************************
*                      *
* BV FOR L(4) OPS      *
*                      *
************************
```

```
KRR4   BVARIABLE   FNU$LBUS4*SNF$RIR4
KRS4   BVARIABLE   FNU$LBUS4*SNF$SIR4
KRO4   BVARIABLE   FNU$LBUS4*SNF$OIR4
RDR41  BVARIABLE   FNU$LBUS4*SNF$RID41
RDS41  BVARIABLE   FNU$LBUS4*SNF$SID41
RDR42  BVARIABLE   FNU$LBUS4*SNF$RID42
RDS42  BVARIABLE   FNU$LBUS4*SNF$SID42
DKT4   BVARIABLE   FNU$LBUS4*SNF$TOK4
DKA4   BVARIABLE   FNU$LBUS4*SNF$AOK4
```

```
*************************
*                       *
*     MACROS            *
*                       *
*************************
```

```
*************************
*                       *
* MACRO -USE            *
* #A  FACILITY          *
* #B  USAGE TIME        *
*                       *
*************************
```

```
USE    STARTMACRO
       SEIZE       #A
       ADVANCE     #B
       ASSIGN      4+,#B
       RELEASE     #A
       ENDMACRO
```

```
*************************
*                       *
* MACRO - SEND          *
*                       *
* #A  FROM              *
* #B  TO                *
* #C  VIA               *
* #D  TRANSIT TIME      *
* #E  BV FOR SEND OP    *
*                       *
*************************
```

```
SEND    STARTMACRO
        TEST E      #E,1
        ENTER       #B
        SEIZE       #C
        ADVANCE     #D
        ASSIGN      4+,#D
        RELEASE     #C
        LEAVE       #A
        ENDMACRO
```

```
*************************
*                       *
*   MACRO - FINI        *
*                       *
*************************
```

```
FINI    STARTMACRO
        MARK        3
        SAVEVALUE   NTXN+,1
        SAVEVALUE   SUMX+,V$TXNX
        SAVEVALUE   SUMW+,V$TXNW
        SAVEVALUE   SUMT+,V$TXNT
        SAVEVALUE   MRESP,V$MRESP
        ASSIGN      1,0
        ASSIGN      2,0
        ASSIGN      3,0
        ASSIGN      4,0
        ENDMACRO
```

```
**------------------------------------------ --------------------------*
*                                                                      *
*            BEGIN SIMULATION                                          *
*                                                                      *
**-------------------------------------------------------------------*
```

```
        SIMULATE
*************************
*                       *
*    CPU #1             *
*                       *
*************************
```

```
        RMULT       3,5,7,9,11,13,15,17

CPU1    GENERATE    ,,,X$MAXMP,,,F
STAR1   PRIORITY    9                   SET HIGH P FOR NEW TXN
        MARK        2                   ARRIVAL TIME
        ASSIGN      1,1                 CPU ID
        TRANSFER    .X$NREAD,WWW1,RRR1
RRR1    TRANSFER    .X$PIN1,NIN11,RIN11
```

```
*************************
*                       *
* DATA IS IN DATA CACHE *
```

```
*                        *
*************************
  RIN11 ENTER     RID11           PUT TXN IN READ REQ BUFFER
  USE   MACRO     DRP11,X$RDEX1    SEARCH AND READ CACHE
        LEAVE     RID11            FREE BUFFER
  FINI  MACRO                      .
        TRANSFER  ,STAR1           A NEW TXN

*************************
*                        *
* DATA IS NOT IN CACHE   *
*                        *
*************************

  NIN11 ENTER     RID11           PUT IN READ REQ BUFFER
 .USE.  MACRO     DRP11,X$REX      SEARCH DIRECTORY
        PRIORITY  0                RESET PRIORITY
  SEND  MACRO     RID11,ROK1,LBUS1,X$BEXM,BV$DKR1

        TRANSFER  ,COMR            TO COMMON CODE FOR READ

*************************
*                        *
* WRITE REQUEST TO CACHE*
*                        *
*************************

  WWW1  ENTER     SID11           PUT TXN IN WRITE REQ BUFFER

  USE   MACRO     DRP11,X$RDEX1    WRITE DATA IN CACHE

        PRIORITY  0                RESET TXN PRIORITY
  SEND  MACRO     SID11,SOK1,LBUS1,X$BEX1,BV$DKS1

        SPLIT     1,COMW

  FINI  MACRO

        TRANSFER  ,STAR1           A NEW TXN

*************************
*                        *
*    CPU #2               *
*                        *
*************************

  CPU2  GENERATE  ,,,X$MAXMP,,,F
  STAR2 PRIORITY  9                SET HIGH P FOR NEW TXN
        MARK      2                ARRIVAL TIME
        ASSIGN    1,2              CPU ID
        TRANSFER  .X$NREAD,WWW2,RRR2
  RRR2  TRANSFER  .X$PIN1,NIN12,RIN12

*************************
```

```
*                         *
* DATA IS IN DATA CACHE *
*                         *
*************************

RIN12 ENTER      RID12              PUT TXN IN READ REQ BUFFER
USE   MACRO      DRP12,X$RDEX1      SEARCH AND READ CACHE
      LEAVE      RID12              FREE BUFFER
FINI  MACRO
      TRANSFER   ,STAR2             A NEW TXN


*************************
*                       *
* DATA IS NOT IN CACHE  *
*                       *
*************************

NIN12 ENTER      RID12              PUT IN READ REQ BUFFER
USE   MACRO      DRP12,X$REX        SEARCH DIRECTORY
      PRIORITY   0                  RESET PRIORITY
SEND  MACRO      RID12,ROK1,LBUS1,X$BEXM,BV$DKR1

      TRANSFER   ,COMR              TO COMMON CODE FOR READ


*************************
*                       *
* WRITE REQUEST TO CACHE*
*                       *
*************************

WWW2  ENTER      SID12              PUT TXN IN WRITE REQ BUFFER

USE   MACRO      DRP12,X$RDEX1      WRITE DATA IN CACHE

      PRIORITY   0                  RESET TXN PRIORITY
SEND  MACRO      SID12,SOK1,LBUS1,X$BEX1,BV$DKS1

      SPLIT      1,COMW

FINI  MACRO

      TRANSFER   ,STAR2             A NEW TXN

*************************
*                       *
*    CPU #3             *
*                       *
*************************

CPU3  GENERATE   ,,,X$MAXMP,,,P
STAR3 PRIORITY   9                  SET HIGH P FOR NEW TXN
      MARK       2                  ARRIVAL TIME
      ASSIGN     1,3                CPU ID
      TRANSFER   .X$NREAD,WWW3,RRR3
RRR3  TRANSFER   .X$PIN1,NIN13,RIN13
```

```
*************************
*                       *
* DATA IS IN DATA CACHE *
*                       *
*************************

RIN13 ENTER     RID13                    PUT TXN IN READ REQ BUFFER
USE   MACRO     DRP13,X$RDEX1            SEARCH AND READ CACHE
      LEAVE     RID13                    FREE BUFFER
FINI  MACRO
      TRANSFER  ,STAR3                   A NEW TXN


*************************
*                       *
* DATA IS NOT IN CACHE  *
*                       *
*************************

NIN13 ENTER     RID13                    PUT IN READ REQ BUFFER
USE   MACRO     DRP13,X$REX              SEARCH DIRECTORY
      PRIORITY  C                        RESET PRIORITY
SEND  MACRO     RID13,ROK1,LBUS1,X$BEXM,BV$DKR1

      TRANSFER  ,COMR                    TO COMMON CODE FOR READ


*************************
*                       *
* WRITE REQUEST TO CACHE*
*                       *
*************************

WWW3  ENTER     SID13                    PUT TXN IN WRITE REQ BUFFER

USE   MACRO     DRP13,X$RDEX1            WRITE DATA IN CACHE

      PRIORITY  0                        RESET TXN PRIORITY

SEND  MACRO     SID13,SOK1,LBUS1,X$BEX1,BV$DKS1

      SPLIT     1,COMW

FINI  MACRO

      TRANSFER  ,STAR3


*************************
*                       *
*   CPU #4              *
*                       *
*************************

CPU4  GENERATE  ,,,X$MAXMP,,,P
STAR4 PRIORITY  9                        SET HIGH P FOR NEW TXN
      MARK      2                        ARRIVAL TIME
```

```
        ASSIGN      1,4                 CPU ID
        TRANSFER    .X$NREAD,WWW4,RRR4
RRR4    TRANSFER    .X$PIN1,NIN14,RIN14


*************************
*                       *
* DATA IS IN DATA CACHE *
*                       *
*************************

RIN14   ENTER       RID14               PUT TXN IN READ REQ BUFFER
USE     MACRO       DRP14,X$RDEX1       SEARCH AND READ CACHE
        LEAVE       RID14               FREE BUFFER
FINI    MACRO
        TRANSFER    ,STAR4              A NEW TXN


*************************
*                       *
* DATA IS NOT IN CACHE  *
*                       *
*************************

NIN14   ENTER       RID14               PUT IN READ REQ BUFFER
USE     MACRO       DRP14,X$REX         SEARCH DIRECTORY
        PRIORITY    0                   RESET PRIORITY
SEND    MACRO       RID14,ROK1,LBUS1,X$BEXM,BV$DKR1

        TRANSFER    ,COMR               TO COMMON CODE FOR READ


*************************
*                       *
* WRITE REQUEST TO CACHE*
*                       *
*************************

WWW4    ENTER       SID14               PUT TXN IN WRITE REQ BUFFER

USE     MACRO       DRP14,X$RDEX1        WRITE DATA IN CACHE

        PRIORITY    0                   RESET TXN PRIORITY

SEND    MACRO       SID14,SOK1,LBUS1,X$BEX1,BV$DKS1

        SPLIT       1,COMW

FINI    MACRO

        TRANSFER    ,STAR4              A NEW TXN


*************************
*                       *
*    CPU #5             *
*                       *
*************************
```

```
CPU5    GENERATE    ,,,X$MAXMP,,,P
STAR5   PRIORITY    9                    SET HIGH P FOR NEW TXN
        MARK        2                    ARRIVAL TIME
        ASSIGN      1,5                  CPU ID
        TRANSFER    .X$NREAD,WWW5,RRR5
RRR5    TRANSFER    .X$PIN1,NIN15,RIN15
```

```
****************************
*                          *
* DATA IS IN DATA CACHE *
*                          *
****************************
```

```
RIN15   ENTER       RID15                PUT TXN IN READ REQ BUFFER
USE     MACRO       DRP15,X$RDEX1        SEARCH AND READ CACHE
        LEAVE       RID15                FREE BUFFER
FINI    MACRO
        TRANSFER    ,STAR5               A NEW TXN
```

```
****************************
*                          *
* DATA IS NOT IN CACHE  *
*                          *
****************************
```

```
NIN15   ENTER       RID15                PUT IN READ REQ BUFFER
USE     MACRO       DRP15,X$REX          SEARCH DIRECTORY
        PRIORITY    0                    RESET PRIORITY
SEND    MACRO       RID15,ROK1,LBUS1,X$BEXM,BV$DKR1

        TRANSFER    ,COMR                TO COMMON CODE FOR READ
```

```
****************************
*                          *
* WRITE REQUEST TO CACHE*
*                          *
****************************
```

```
WWW5    ENTER       SID15                PUT TXN IN WRITE REQ BUFFER

USE     MACRO       DRP15,X$RDEX1         WRITE DATA IN CACHE

        PRIORITY    0                    RESET TXN PRIORITY

SEND    MACRO       SID15,SOK1,LBUS1,X$BEX1,BV$DKS1

        SPLIT       1,COMW

FINI    MACRO

        TRANSFER    ,STAR5               A NEW TXN
```

```
*-------------------------------------------------------------*
*                                                             *
*    COMMON CODE FOR READ REQUEST                             *
```

```
*                                                              *
*-------------------------------------------------------------*
  CONR   ASSIGN      11,0

  USE    MACRO       KRP1,X$KEX

  SEND   MACRO       ROK1,RIK2,GBUS,X$BEXM,BV$KKR12

  USE    MACRO       KRP2,X$KEX

  SEND   MACRO       RIK2,RIR2,LBUS2,X$BEXM,BV$KRR2

  USE    MACRO       RRP2,X$REX

         TRANSFER    .X$PIN2,NIN2,RIN2
  NIN2   ASSIGN      11,0

  SEND   MACRO       RIR2,ROK2,LBUS2,X$BEXM,BV$RKR2

  USE    MACRO       KRP2,X$KEX

  SEND   MACRO       ROK2,RIK3,GBUS,X$BEXM,BV$KKR23

  USE    MACRO       KRP3,X$KEX

  SEND   MACRO       RIK3,RIR3,LBUS3,X$BEXM,BV$KRR3

  USE    MACRO       RRP3,X$REX

         TRANSFER    .X$PIN3,NIN3,RIN3
  NIN3   ASSIGN      11,0

  SEND   MACRO       RIR3,ROK3,LBUS3,X$BEXM,BV$RKR3

  USE    MACRO       KRP3,X$KEX

  SEND   MACRO       ROK3,RIK4,GBUS,X$BEXM,BV$KKR34

  USE    MACRO       KRP4,X$KEX

  SEND   MACRO       RIK4,RIR4,LBUS4,X$BEXM,BV$KRR4

  USE    MACRO       RRP4,X$REX

         TRANSFER    ,RIN4
*-------------------------------------------------------------*
*                                                              *
*   READ DATA IS FOUND IN L(2)                                 *
*                                                              *
*-------------------------------------------------------------*

  RIN2   TRANSFER    .5,RRR21,RRR22
```

```
*************************
*                       *
* DATA IS IN D21        *
*                       *
*************************

  RRR21 ASSIGN      11,0

  SEND   MACRO      RIR2,RID21,LBUS2,X$BEXM,BV$RDR21

 .USE    MACRO      DRP21,X$DEX2

  SEND   MACRO      RID21,TOK2,LBUS2,X$BEX1,BV$DKT2

         TRANSFER   ,RTF2

*************************
*                       *
* DATA IS IN D22        *
*                       *
*************************

  RRR22 ASSIGN      11,0

  SEND   MACRO      RIR2,RID22,LBUS2,X$BEXM,BV$RDR22

  USE    MACRO      DRP22,X$DEX2

  SEND   MACRO      RID22,TOK2,LBUS2,X$BEX1,BV$DKT2

         TRANSFER   ,RTF2

*************************
*                       *
* READ-THROUGH TO L(1)  *
*                       *
*************************

  RTF2   ASSIGN     11,0

  USE    MACRO      KRP2,X$KEX

  SEND   MACRO      TOK2,TIK1,GBUS,X$BEX1,BV$RTOK2

*---------------------------------------------------------------*
*                                                               *
* STORE DATA INTO L(1) AS RESULT OF A READ-THROUGH              *
*                                                               *
*---------------------------------------------------------------*

  STOR1 ASSIGN      11,0

  USE    MACRO      KRP1,X$KEX

         SPLIT      1,FN$WICHW,1
```

```
          TERMINATE

*************************
*                       *
* RT STORE INTO D11      *
*                       *
*************************

  WWW11 ASSIGN      11,0

  SEND  MACRO      TIK1,TID11,LBUS1,X$BEX1,BV$KDT11

  USE   MACRO      DRP11,X$DEX1

        TRANSFER   .X$POV1,NOV11,OVL11
  NOV11 LEAVE      TID11

  FINI  MACRO

        TRANSFER   ,STAR1

  OVL11 SPLIT      1,OVF11

  FINI  MACRO

        TRANSFER   ,STAR1
  OVF11 ASSIGN     11,0

  SEND  MACRO      TID11,OOK1,LBUS1,X$BEXM,BV$DKO1

        TRANSFER   ,OVL1

*************************
*                       *
* RT STORE INTO D12      *
*                       *
*************************

  WWW12 ASSIGN     11,0

  SEND  MACRO      TIK1,TID12,LBUS1,X$BEX1,BV$KDT12

  USE   MACRO      DRP12,X$DEX1

        TRANSFER   .X$POV1,NOV12,OVL12
  NOV12 LEAVE      TID12

  FINI  MACRO

        TRANSFER   ,STAR2

  OVL12 SPLIT      1,OVF12

  FINI  MACRO
```

```
        TRANSFER    ,STAR2
OVF12 ASSIGN      11,0

SEND  MACRO      TID12,OOK1,LBUS1,X$BEXM,BV$DKO1

        TRANSFER    ,OVL1

*************************
*                       *
* RT STORE INTO D13      *
*                       *
*************************

WWW13 ASSIGN      11,0

SEND  MACRO      TIK1,TID13,LBUS1,X$BEX1,BV$KDT13

USE   MACRO      DRP13,X$DEX1

        TRANSFER    .X$POV1,NOV13,OVL13
NOV13 LEAVE      TID13

FINI  MACRO

        TRANSFER    ,STAR3

OVL13 SPLIT      1,OVF13

FINI  MACRO

        TRANSFER    ,STAR3
OVF13 ASSIGN      11,0

SEND  MACRO      TID13,OOK1,LBUS1,X$BEXM,BV$DKO1

        TRANSFER    ,OVL1

*************************
*                       *
* RT STORE INTO D14      *
*                       *
*************************

WWW14 ASSIGN      11,0

SEND  MACRO      TIK1,TID14,LBUS1,X$BEX1,BV$KDT14

USE   MACRO      DRP14,X$DEX1

        TRANSFER    .X$POV1,NOV14,OVL14
NOV14 LEAVE      TID14

FINI  MACRO

        TRANSFER    ,STAR4
```

```
OVL14 SPLIT      1,OVF14

FINI  MACRO

      TRANSFER   ,STAR4
OVF14 ASSIGN     11,0

SEND  MACRO      TID14,OOK1,LBUS1,X$BEXM,BV$DKO1

      TRANSFER   ,OVL1

*************************
*                       *
* RT STORE INTO D15     *
*                       *
*************************

WWW15 ASSIGN     11,0

SEND  MACRO      TIK1,TID15,LBUS1,X$BEX1,BV$KDT15

USE   MACRO      DRP15,X$DEX1

      TRANSFER   .X$POV1,NOV15,OVL15
NOV15 LEAVE      TID15

FINI  MACRO

      TRANSFER   ,STAR5

OVL15 SPLIT      1,OVF15

FINI  MACRO

      TRANSFER   ,STAR5
OVF15 ASSIGN     11,0

SEND  MACRO      TID15,OOK1,LBUS1,X$BEXM,BV$DKO1

      TRANSFER   ,OVL1

*************************
*                       *
* HANDLE OVF FROM L(1)  *
*                       *
*************************

OVL1  ASSIGN     11,0

USE   MACRO      KRP1,X$KEX

SEND  MACRO      OOK1,OIK2,GBUS,X$BEXM,BV$KKO12

USE   MACRO      KRP2,X$KEX
```

```
     SEND   MACRO       OIK2,OIR2,LBUS2,X$BEXM,BV$KRO2

     USE    MACRO       RRP2,X$REX

            LEAVE       OIR2
            TERMINATE
```

```
*-------------------------------------------------------------------*
*                                                                   *
*  READ DATA IS FOUND IN L(3)                                       *
*                                                                   *
*-------------------------------------------------------------------*
```

```
     RIN3   TRANSFER    .5,RRR31,RRR32
```

```
*****************************
*                          *
* DATA IS IN D31           *
*                          *
*****************************
```

```
     RRR31  ASSIGN      11,0

     SEND   MACRO       RIR3,RID31,LBUS3,X$BEXM,BV$RDR31

     USE    MACRO       DRP31,X$DEX3

     SEND   MACRO       RID31,TOK3,LBUS3,X$BEX2,BV$DKT3

            TRANSFER    ,RTF3
```

```
*****************************
*                          *
* DATA IS IN D32           *
*                          *
*****************************
```

```
     RRR32  ASSIGN      11,0

     SEND   MACRO       RIR3,RID32,LBUS3,X$BEXM,BV$RDR32

     USE    MACRO       DRP32,X$DEX3

     SEND   MACRO       RID32,TOK3,LBUS3,X$BEX2,BV$DKT3

            TRANSFER    ,RTF3
```

```
*****************************
*                          *
* RT TO L(1) AND L(2)      *
*                          *
*****************************
```

```
     RTF3   ASSIGN      11,0
```

```
USE    MACRO      KRP3,X$KEX

       TEST E     BV$RTOK3,1
       ENTER      TIK1
       ENTER      TIK2
       SEIZE      GBUS
       ADVANCE    X$BEX2
       ASSIGN     4+,X$BEX2
       RELEASE    GBUS
       LEAVE      TOK3
       SPLIT      1,STOR1
       SPLIT      1,STOR2
       TERMINATE
```

```
*------------------------------------------------------------*
*                                                            *
* STORE DATA INTO L(2) AS RESULT OF A READ-THROUGH           *
*                                                            *
*------------------------------------------------------------*
```

```
STOR2 ASSIGN     11,0

USE   MACRO      KRP2,X$KEX

SEND  MACRO      TIK2,TIR2,LBUS2,X$BEX2,BV$KRT2

USE   MACRO      RRP2,X$REX

      SPLIT      1,OVH2
      TRANSFER   .5,SSS21,SSS22
```

```
***************************
*                         *
* STORE INTO D21          *
*                         *
***************************
```

```
SSS21 ASSIGN     11,0

SEND  MACRO      TIR2,TID21,LBUS2,X$BEX2,BV$RDT21

USE   MACRO      DRP21,X$DEX2

      LEAVE      TID21
      TERMINATE
```

```
***************************
*                         *
* STORE INTO D22          *
*                         *
***************************
```

```
SSS22 ASSIGN     11,0
```

```
   SEND   MACRO       TIR2,TID22,LBUS2,X$BEX2,BV$RDT22

   USE    MACRO       DRP22,X$DEX2

          LEAVE       TID22
          TERMINATE

**************************
*                        *
* OVERFLOW HANDLING       *
*                        *
**************************

   OVH2   TRANSFER    .X$POV2,NOVL2,OVL2
   OVL2   TEST E      BV$RKO2,1
          ENTER       OOK2
          SEIZE       LBUS2
          ADVANCE     X$BEXM
          ASSIGN      4+,X$BEXM
          RELEASE     LBUS2

   SEND   MACRO       OOK2,OIK3,GBUS,X$BEXM,BV$KKO23

   USE    MACRO       KRP3,X$KEX

   SEND   MACRO       OIK3,OIR3,LBUS3,X$BEXM,BV$KRO3

   USE    MACRO       RRP3,X$REX

          LEAVE       OIR3
   NOVL2  TERMINATE

*------------------------------------------------------------*
*                                                            *
* READ DATA IS FOUND IN L(4)                                 *
*                                                            *
*------------------------------------------------------------*

   RIN4   TRANSFER    .5,RRR41,RRR42

**************************
*                        *
* DATA IS IN D41          *
*                        *
**************************

   RRR41  ASSIGN      11,0

   SEND   MACRO       RIR4,RID41,LBUS4,X$BEXM,BV$RDR41

   USE    MACRO       DRP41,X$DEX4

   SEND   MACRO       RID41,TOK4,LBUS4,X$BEX3,BV$DKT4

          TRANSFER    ,RTF4
```

```
*************************
*                       *
* DATA IS IN D42         *
*                       *
*************************

 RRR42 ASSIGN      11,0

 SEND  MACRO      RIR4,RID42,LBUS4,X$BEXM,BV$RDR42

 USE   MACRO      DRP42,X$DEX4

 SEND  MACRO      RID42,TOK4,LBUS4,X$BEX3,BV$DKT4

       TRANSFER   ,RTF4

*************************
*                       *
* RT TO L(1),L(2),L(3)   *
*                       *
*************************

 RTF4  ASSIGN     11,0

 USE   MACRO      KRP4,X$KEX

       TEST E     BV$RTOK4,1
       ENTER      TIK1
       ENTER      TIK2
       ENTER      TIK3
       SEIZE      GBUS
       ADVANCE    X$BEX3
       ASSIGN     4+,X$BEX3
       RELEASE    GBUS
       LEAVE      TOK4
       SPLIT      1,STOR1
       SPLIT      1,STOR2
       SPLIT      1,STOR3
       TERMINATE

*-------------------------------------------------------*
*                                                       *
*   STORE INTO L(3) AS A RESULT OF READ-THROUGH          *
*                                                       *
*-------------------------------------------------------*

 STOR3 ASSIGN     11,0

 USE   MACRO      KRP3,X$KEX

 SEND  MACRO      TIK3,TIR3,LBUS3,X$BEX3,BV$KRT3

 USE   MACRO      RRP3,X$REX
```

```
           SPLIT        1,OVH3
           TRANSFER     .5,SSS31,SSS32

**************************
*                        *
* STORE INTO D31         *
*                        *
**************************

SSS31  ASSIGN       11,0

 SEND   MACRO        TIR3,TID31,LBUS3,X$BEX3,BV$RDT31

 USE    MACRO        DRP31,X$DEX3

        LEAVE        TID31
        TERMINATE

**************************
*                        *
* STORE INTO D32         *
*                        *
**************************

 SSS32 ASSIGN       11,0

 SEND   MACRO        TIR3,TID32,LBUS3,X$BEX3,BV$RDT32

 USE    MACRO        DRP32,X$DEX3

        LEAVE        TID32
        TERMINATE

**************************
*                        *
* OVERFLOW HANDLING      *
*                        *
**************************

 OVH3   TRANSFER     .X$PCV3,NOVL3,OVL3
 OVL3   TEST E       BV$RKO3,1
        ENTER        OOK3
        SEIZE        LBUS3
        ADVANCE      X$BEXM
        ASSIGN       4+,X$BEXM
        RELEASE      LBUS3

 SEND   MACRO        OOK3,OIK4,GBUS,X$BEXM,BV$KKO34

 USE    MACRO        KRP4,X$KEX

 SEND   MACRO        OIK4,OIR4,LBUS4,X$BEXM,BV$KRO4

 USE    MACRO        RRP4,X$REX
        LEAVE        OIR4
```

-313-

MOVL3 TERMINATE

```
*-------------------------------------------------------------------*
*                                                                   *
*   COMMON CODE FOR STORE-BEHIND                                    *
*                                                                   *
*-------------------------------------------------------------------*

 COMM  ASSIGN     11,0

 USE   MACRO      KRP1,X$KEX

 SEND  MACRO      SOK1,SIK2,GBUS,X$BEX1,BV$KKS12

 USE   MACRO      KRP2,X$KEX

 SEND  MACRO      SIK2,SIR2,LBUS2,X$BEX1,BV$KRS2

 USE   MACRO      RRP2,X$REX

       TRANSFER   .5,SWS21,SWS22

***************************
*                         *
* SB WRITE INTO D21       *
*                         *
***************************

 SWS21 ASSIGN     11,0

 SEND  MACRO      SIR2,SID21,LBUS2,X$BEX1,BV$RDS21

 USE   MACRO      DRP21,X$DEX2

 SEND  MACRO      SID21,SOK2,LBUS2,X$BEX2,BV$DKS2

       SPLIT      1,STB23
       ENTER      AOK2
       TRANSFER   ,ACK21

***************************
*                         *
* SB WRITE INTO D22       *
*                         *
***************************

 SWS22 ASSIGN     11,0

 SEND  MACRO      SIR2,SID22,LBUS2,X$BEX1,BV$RDS22

 USE   MACRO      DRP22,X$DEX2

 SEND  MACRO      SID22,SOK2,LBUS2,X$BEX2,BV$DKS2

       SPLIT      1,STB23
```

```
        ENTER       AOK2
        TRANSFER    ,ACK21
```

```
*------------------------------------------------------------------*
*                                                                  *
* STORE-BEHIND TO L(3)                                             *
*                                                                  *
*------------------------------------------------------------------*
```

```
STB23 ASSIGN      11,0

USE   MACRO       KRP2,X$KEX

SEND  MACRO       SOK2,SIK3,GBUS,X$BEX2,BV$KKS23

USE   MACRO       KRP3,X$KEX

SEND  MACRO       SIK3,SIR3,LBUS3,X$BEX2,BV$KRS3

USE   MACRO       RRP3,X$REX

      TRANSFER    .5,SWS31,SWS32
```

```
*************************
*                       *
* SB WRITE INTO D31      *
*                       *
*************************
```

```
SWS31 ASSIGN      11,0

SEND  MACRO       SIR3,SID31,LBUS3,X$BEX2,BV$RDS31

USE   MACRO       DRP31,X$BEX3

SEND  MACRO       SID31,SOK3,LBUS3,X$BEX3,BV$DKS3

      SPLIT       1,STB34
      ENTER       AOK3
      TRANSFER    ,ACK32
```

```
*************************
*                       *
* SB WRITE INTO D32      *
*                       *
*************************
```

```
SWS32 ASSIGN      11,0

SEND  MACRO       SIR3,SID32,LBUS3,X$BEX2,BV$RDS32

USE   MACRO       DRP32,X$DEX3

SEND  MACRO       SID32,SOK3,LBUS3,X$BEX3,BV$DKS3
```

```
        SPLIT       1,STB34
        ENTER       AOK3
        TRANSFER    ,ACK32
```

```
*--------------------------------------------------------------*
*                                                              *
*   STORE-BEHIND TO L(4)                                       *
*                                                              *
*--------------------------------------------------------------*
```

```
 STB34 ASSIGN      11,0

 USE   MACRO       KRP3,X$KEX

 SEND  MACRO       SOK3,SIK4,GBUS,X$BEX3,BV$KKS34

 USE   MACRO       KRP4,X$KEX

 SEND  MACRO       SIK4,SIR4,LBUS4,X$BEX3,BV$KRS4

 USE   MACRO       RRP4,X$REX

       TRANSFER    .5,SWS41,SWS42
```

```
*************************
*                       *
* SB WRITE INTO D41      *
*                       *
*************************
```

```
 SWS41 ASSIGN      11,0

 SEND  MACRO       SIR4,SID41,LBUS4,X$BEX3,BV$RDS41

 USE   MACRO       DRP41,X$DEX4

 SEND  MACRO       SID41,AOK4,LBUS4,X$BEXM,BV$DKA4

       TRANSFER    ,ACK43
```

```
*************************
*                       *
* SB WRITE INTO D42      *
*                       *
*************************
```

```
 SWS42 ASSIGN      11,0

 SEND  MACRO       SIR4,SID42,LBUS4,X$BEX3,BV$RDS42

 USE   MACRO       DRP42,X$DEX4

 SEND  MACRO       SID42,AOK4,LBUS4,X$BEXM,BV$DKA4

       TRANSFER    ,ACK43
```

```
*----------------------------------------------------------------*
*                                                                *
*   ACK FROM L(4) TO L(3)                                        *
*                                                                *
*----------------------------------------------------------------*

  ACK43 ASSIGN      11,0

  USE   MACRO       KRP4,X$KEX

  SEND  MACRO       AOK4,AIK3,GBUS,X$BEXM,BV$KKA43

  USE   MACRO       KRP3,X$KEX

  SEND  MACRO       AIK3,AIR3,LBUS3,X$BEXM,BV$KRA3

  USE   MACRO       RRP3,X$REX

****************************
*                         *
*  FORWARD THE ACK UP     *
*                         *
****************************

  SEND  MACRO       AIR3,AOK3,LBUS3,X$BEXM,BV$RKA3

  USE   MACRO       KRP3,X$KEX

  SEND  MACRO       AOK3,AIK2,GBUS,X$BEXM,BV$KKA32

  USE   MACRO       KRP2,X$KEX

  SEND  MACRO       AIK2,AIR2,LBUS2,X$BEXM,BV$KRA2

  USE   MACRO       RRP2,X$REX

        LEAVE       AIR2
        TERMINATE

*----------------------------------------------------------------*
*                                                                *
*  ACK FROM L(3) TO L(2)                                         *
*                                                                *
*----------------------------------------------------------------*

  ACK32 ASSIGN      11,0

  USE   MACRO       KRP3,X$KEX

  SEND  MACRO       AOK3,AIK2,GBUS,X$BEXM,BV$KKA32

  USE   MACRO       KRP2,X$KEX

  SEND  MACRO       AIK2,AIR2,LBUS2,X$BEXM,BV$KRA2
```

```
USE    MACRO      RRP2,X$REX

SEND   MACRO      AIR2,AOK2,LBUS2,X$BEXM,BV$RKA2

       TRANSFER   ,ACK21
```

```
*-----------------------------------------------------------------*
*                                                                 *
*   ACK FROM L(2) TO L(1)                                         *
*                                                                 *
*-----------------------------------------------------------------*
```

```
ACK21 ASSIGN     11,0

USE    MACRO     KRP2,X$KEX

SEND   MACRO     AOK2,AIK1,GBUS,X$BEXM,BV$KKA21

USE    MACRO     KRP1,X$KEX

       SPLIT      1,PN$WICHA,1
       TERMINATE
```

```
****************************
*                          *
* ACK HANDLED BY D11       *
*                          *
****************************
```

```
AAA11 ASSIGN     11,0

SEND   MACRO     AIK1,AID11,LBUS1,X$BEXM,BV$KDA11

USE    MACRO     DRP11,X$REX

       LEAVE      AID11
       TERMINATE
```

```
****************************
*                          *
* ACK HANDLED BY D12       *
*                          *
****************************
```

```
AAA12 ASSIGN     11,0

SEND   MACRO     AIK1,AID12,LBUS1,X$BEXM,BV$KDA12

USE    MACRO     DRP12,X$REX

       LEAVE      AID12
       TERMINATE
```

```
****************************
     *  ...
```

```
*                         *
* ACK HANDLED BY D13      *
*                         *
**************************

AAA13 ASSIGN       11,0

SEND   MACRO       AIK1,AID13,LBUS1,X$BEXM,BV$KDA13

USE    MACRO       DRP13,X$REX

       LEAVE       AID13
       TERMINATE

**************************
*                         *
* ACK HANDLED BY D14      *
*                         *
**************************

AAA14 ASSIGN       11,0

SEND   MACRO       AIK1,AID14,LBUS1,X$BEXM,BV$KDA14

USE    MACRO       DRP14,X$REX

       LEAVE       AID14
       TERMINATE

**************************
*                         *
* ACK HANDLED BY D15      *
*                         *
**************************

AAA15 ASSIGN       11,0

SEND   MACRO       AIK1,AID15,LBUS1,X$BEXM,BV$KDA15

USE    MACRO       DRP15,X$REX

       LEAVE       AID15
       TERMINATE

*----------------------------------------------------------------*
*                                                                *
*   SIMULATION CONTROL                                           *
*                                                                *
*----------------------------------------------------------------*

       GENERATE    X$TIMER
       TERMINATE   1
       START       1
       END
```

BIOGRAPHIC NOTE

Chat-Yu Lam (林哲宇) was born in Swatow, Kwuntung Province, China, on December 18, 1951. He emigrated to HongKong in 1959 where he completed grade school at the Chi Tak Public School in 1964 and completed high school at the Queen Elizabeth School in 1970.

He attended Massachusetts Institute of Technology in September 1970 and graduated in June 1974 with a B.Sc. in Electrical Engineering. During this time, he was a systems programmer for the M.I.T. Departmental Information System and was in the Cambridge Project JANUS Database Management System design team.

In September 1974 he attended Northwestern University and graduated with a M.Sc. in Computer Science in June 1976. During this time he was also a software system analyst at A.B. Dick Company, Chicago.

He began his doctoral program at the Sloan School of Management, M.I.T., in September 1976, majoring in Management Information Systems. While at the Sloan School, he was a research assistant for the NEEMIS Project, the RADC Decision Support Systems Project, and the INFOPLEX Project. He was a teaching assistant for the Database Systems, Operating Systems, and Systems Programming courses at the Sloan School. He was also in the MIMS Database Management System development team at the MITROL Inc., Waltham, Massachusetts.

PUBLICATIONS

1. 'Properties of Storage Hierarchy Systems with Multiple Page Sizes and Redundant Data', ACM Trans. on Database Systems, 4 3 (September 1979) (with S. Madnick)

2. 'INFOPLEX Data Base Computer Architecture - Concepts and Directions', M.I.T. Sloan School Working Paper No. 1046-79 (C.I.S.R. Working Paper No. 41), 1979 (with S. Madnick)

3. 'Composite Information Systems - A New Concept in Information Systems', M.I.T. Sloan School Working Paper No. 993-78 (C.I.S.R. Working paper No. 35), 1978 (with S. Madnick)

4. 'The GMIS 2 Architecture', M.I.T. Energy Laboratory Working Paper No. MIT-EL-77-014WP, 1977 (with J. Lamb et. al.)